De Quatuor Summis Imperiis:

AN HISTORICAL ACCOUNT Of the Four Chief MONARCHIES OR EMPIRES Of the WORLD.

VIZ.

I. The *Assyrian*, or *Babylonian*.
II. The *Persian*.
III. The *Grecian*.
IV. The *Roman*, Continued down to the beginning of the Reign of the Emperor *CHARLES* the Fifth.

BEING

A Relation of the most Considerable Occurrences that have happened in the World from *Noah's* Flood to the Year of our Lord J. C. 1520.

Written in Latin by *JOHN SLEIDAN*, sometime Ambassador in *England* from the Protestant States of *Germany*, Deputy for the City of *Strasburg* in the Council of *Trent*, and Author of *The History of the Reformation of Religion in* Germany.

Now newly Englished.

London: Printed for *Abel Swall* and *Tim. Childe*, at the *Unicorn* at the West end of St. *Pauls*. 1695.

THE LIFE OF Joh. Sleidan.

JOHN, *Sirnamed* Sleidan, *from the Place of his Nativity, applyed himself to the Study of the Liberal Sciences at* Paris, *and settled at* Strasburg; *where having shewn many Proofs of his singular Learning, Prudence, and Piety, he was esteemed as a Person duly qualified, although a Foreigner, for the Management of Affairs of the greatest Importance. Therefore he was sent on an Embassy into* England *for the promoting of the Common Interest of the Protestants, and was also present at the Council of* Trent *in Quality of Commissioner or Deputy of the City of* Strasburg: *In the executing of both which Offices, although full of Difficulty, he behaved himself so well, that he obtained very great Applause from those that employed him. But a more lasting Monument of his Labours, is that admirable History concerning*

the State of the Common-wealth and Religion in Germany *since the beginning of the Reformation by* Luther, *most accurately compriſed in Twenty Six Books: In the carrying on of which Work the Author was not only encouraged, but alſo ſupplyed with Matter by that Renowned Divine,* D. Jacobus Sturmius, *and wrote it with much Elegancy and Sincerity, adding likewiſe thereto a very Ingenious Treatiſe of the Four Monarchies, or Chief Empires of the World. Nevertheleſs ſome Malevolent Perſons envying him this Glory, to the extream Detriment of the Church, and the whole* German *Empire, either through Negligence or a prepoſterous Fear that they ſhould never be able to equal him, have endeavoured to ſuppreſs it; chooſing rather that ſuch Memorable Tranſactions ſhould be buryed in Oblivion, than that ſo Uſeful a Work, begun by him ſhould be continued. Our Learned Author,* John Sleidan, *died at* Strasburg *of an Epidemical Diſeaſe, having attained only to the* 50th. *Year of his Age,* A. D. 1556.

An

An INDEX *of the Proper Names, and Principal Matters.*

A.

Abagatus, *King of* Perſia. p 80
Abraham 5
Achas *King of* Judah 9
Achæi, *people of* Greece 49
Attack *Victory* 72
Adalgiſius 131
Adelbertus *A. Biſh. of* Bremen 158
Adolphus, *Emp.* 186
Adolphus, *King of the* Goths 104
Adramelech *the ſon of* Senacherib. 10
Adrian I. *Pope* 131
Adrian II. 146
Adrian IV. 172, 173
Ægypt *a Province of the* Romans, 73 Yearly Revenue, 72. 79
Ælius Adrianus Cæſar 79
Æmitianus, *Emp.* 85
Æſchines 35
Æötius, Valentinian's *General.* 106
Ænobarbus, *a* Turkiſh *Envoy.*
Æneas 29
Æquians 37
Æolians 45
Afranius, *General* 64
Afranius, *Poet.* 51
Africa 49
Africanus, *a Lawyer* 81
Agabus 77
Agapetus *Biſhop of* Rome 118
Agrigentines 49
Ariſtulphus *K. of the* Lombards 129
Alaricus *K. of the* Goths. 103. 113
Alanes 104
Albertus Cæſar.
Albertus II. *Emp.* 186, 187
Albinus 80
Albinus, *Tutor to* Charlemagne. 142
Alburnus Valens, *a Lawyer* 79
Alcadas *King of* Babylon 6
Alcibiades 22
Alexander *the Great* 24
Alexander Severus Cæſar pag. 81
Alexander II. *Pope* 158
Alexander III. 174
Allobroges, *People of* France 51
Ambiani 137
Ambroſe *Biſhop of* Milan 101
Amurath *Emp. of the* Turks 198
Anaſtaſius *Emp.* 111
Anaſtaſius II. 126
Anaxagoras 20
Annibal. 39. 41, 42, 43
——*His Death.* 45
Anno, *Archbiſhop of* Colen 158
Anthemius, *Emperour* 109
Anthemius, *Patriarch of* Conſtantinople 118
Anthius *a Lawyer* 81
Antigonus *King of* Aſia *the leſs.* 28
Antiochus *King of* Syria 43
Antiochus Epiphanes 45

Antipater pag. 28
Antisthenes 34
Antistius Labeo, *a Lawyer* 57
Antoninus Bassianus Caracalla, *Emp.* 80
Antoninus Pius. 79
Appius Claudius Decemvir. 31
Appius Claudius Cæcus 36
Aquæ Sextiæ. 53
Aquisgranum *or* Aix 141
Aquitania 105
Aralius *King of* Babylon 6
Aratus *of* Sicyon 23
Arbaces, *Governour of the* Medes. 8
Arbogastus 100
Arcadius, *Emperour ibid.* & 101
Archadius, *a Lawyer* 81
Archelaus *King of* Ægypt 62
Archidamus K. *of the* Lacedemonians 21
Archimedes 39
— *His Sepulchre.* 40
Arethusa, *Spring.* 40
Ariobarzanes K. *of* Cappadocia. 53
Arioviſtus *King of the* Germans. 61. 136
Aristides 22
Aristippus 34
Aristomenes 22
Aristonicus. 50,51
Aristophanes 20
Aristotle, *Tutor to* Alexander *the Great.* 26,27.34
Arius *King of* Babylon 6
Arius's *Hereſie condemn'd* 93
Armatrites *King of* Babylon 6
Arminius, *General of the* Cheruſci. 74
Armorican *Cities* 139
Arnolphus Malus, *Duke of* Bavaria 149
Arnolphus, *Emperour* 147
Arrianus, *a Lawyer* 79
Artabanus *King of the* Parthians. 81
Artabaſtus 127
Artaxerxes *King of* Perſia 81
Artaxerxes Longimanus 21
Artaxerxes Mnemon 24
Art *of Printing invented* 198
Aſcatades *King of* Babylon 7
Aſdrubal 41
Aſſaradon, *Son of* Sennacherib. 10
Aſſur *King of* Babylon 4. 14
Aſſyrian *Kingdom.* 4
Aſtyages, *or* Aſſuerus, *King of the* Medes 15
Athenian's *Fleet in* Sicily. 21,22,23
Athenian's *Battle at* Marathon. 18
Athenian's *Battle at* Salamis 19
Attalus *King of* Pergamus 50
Attala *King of the* Huns. 106, 107
Attilius Calatinus. 38
Averni, *peop.* 51. 136
Aufidii, *two Lawyers* 56, 57
St. Auguſtin, *Biſhop of* Hippo. 102, 103
Auguſtulus 110
Avitus, *Emp.* 109
Aulus Gabinius. 60, 61, 62
Aul. Offilius, *a Lawyer* 56
Aul. Vitellius. 78
Aurelianus, *Emp.* 86
Aurelius, *Biſhop of* Carthage. 102. 117
Auſonius *the Poet* 100
Azo, *a Lawyer.* 183

B.

BAbel, *City and Tower* p. 3
Babylon *taken* 16
Bactrians 6
Bajazet, *Emperor of the* Turks 193
Balbinus,

Balbinus, *Emp.* 82
Balearean *Islands.* 199
Baleus *King of* Babylon, *sirnam'd* Xerxes 6
Baleus, *another K. of* Babylon. *ibid.*
Baltick *Sea* 111
Balthasar, *the last King of* Babylon 14
Bastarnæ 90
Bavarians 137
Belisarius. 114, &c.
Bellovaci 137
Belochus, *Governor of* Babylon, *made King* 8
Belochus X. *King of* Babylon 6
Benedict VIII. *Pope* 154
Benedict IX. 155
——X. 157
——XII. 190
——XIII. 196
Benefices, *plurality of them* 109
Benmerodach 10
Berengarius 148
Berosus 7
Bertha, *Wife of the Emp.* Henry. 159
Betica, *or Kingdom of* Granada 199
Bibuli, *Poets.* 75
Bocchus *K. of* Mauritania 52
Boii 38
Boleslaus, *King of* Poland 154
Boniface I. *Bishop of* Rome 102
——II. 117
——III. 120
——VIII. 187
— *A* German 127
Bononia 129
Britain *Subject to the* Romans 61
Britain *Revolts* 77
Britains *oppress'd by the* English 105, 106
Brundusium 63
Bruno, *elected Pope* 153
Bucco, *Bp. of* Halberstadt 161
Bulgarians. 110. 114. 123
Burchard, *Duke of* Schwaben 150
Byzantium 20. 78

C.

CÆcilius, *a Poet* p. 51
Cælestin V. *Pope.* 187
Cæsena 129
Caius, *a Lawyer.* 57
C. Antonius, *Colleague of* Cicero. 59
C. Aquilius Gallus, *a Lawyer* 56
C. Atteius Pacuvius, *a Lawyer* 57
C. Cæsar Caligula, *Emperor* 77
C. Cassius 67
C. Claudius Nero, *Consul.* 41. 74
C. Julius Cæsar. 61
——*Slain* 67
C. Gracchus 52
C. Julius, *an Orator* 56
C. Marius 53, 54, 55. 135
C. Martius Rutilius 33
C. Octavius, *Grandson of* Cæsar 70
C. Trebatius, *a Lawyer* 57
C. Trebonius 67
Callisthenes 35
Calixtus II. *Pope* 170
Cambyses 17
Campania. 41. 106
Canons *of the Apostles* 124
Capitol 32
Captivity *of* Babylon 10, 11. 15. 17
Capua 41
Carinus 89
Charles, *King of* France 130
Charlemagne *saluted Emp.* 131
Charles *the Gross, Emperor* 147
Charles IV. *Emperor* 200
Charles Martel. 137
Charles *the Fair,* 190, &c.
Charles *the Simple, K. of* France. 152
Charles VI. *King of* France 194
Charles V. *Emp.* 199

Carthage *ruin'd.* 48
taken by the Vandals p. 105
Carus, *Emp.* 89
Casimir, *King of* Poland 198
Caspians 6
Cassander *King of* Macedonia 28
Cassius Longinus. 76
Catiline's *Conspiracy* 59
Cato *of* Utica 66
Chaldeans 3
Chaldean, *or* Babylonian *Kingdom* 4
Chatri 78
Childeric *King of* France 138
Christ *born* 72
——*Crucified* 76
Cicero. 58, 59, 60, &c.
— *His Banishment.* 61
— *Death* 71
Cimbri 53
Cimon 23
Cinna, *a Lawyer.* 57
Circumcision 5
Claudius Cæsar. 97
Clement II. *Pope.* 155, 156
——V. 188
——VI. 191
Clementine *Laws,* 180. 188
Cleopatra. 65. 105
— *Her Death.* 105
Clodoveus, *King of* France 113
Cn. & P. Scipiones p. 38
Cn. Pompeius M. 57, 58
Cn. Octavius 54
Codrus 22
Cælibacy *of Priests* 94. 160, 161
Comagenia 78
Commodus Antoninus, *Emp.* 80
Conon 23
Conrad, *Emp.* 149
——II. 154
——III. 171
Constans, *Son of* Constantine *the Great* 95
Constans, *Emp.* 122
Constant. *the great, Emperor.* 91. 94.
Constantine, *Son of* Constantine. 95
Constantin. IV. *Emperour* 123
Constantine, *Pope.* 126
Constantine V. *Emperour* 127
Constantine Monomachus 132
Constantin. VI. *Emperor.* 129, 130
Constantine Palæologus 132
Constantius 96
Constantius Chlorus 89, 90
Constantinople *taken by the* Turks 198
Corinth *raz'd.* 49
Coriolanus *banish'd* p. 19, 20
Cornelius, *Bishop of* Rome 84
Corsica 38
Council. *See* Synod.
Crescentius 153
Crœsus, *King of* Lydia 16
Ctesiphon 90
S. Cyprian, *Bishop of* Carthage 84
Cyprus 20
Cyril, *Bishop of* Alexandria 103
Cyrus *the younger, Son of* Darius. 23
Cyrus *K. of* Persia, *Founder of the 2d. Monarchy.* 16, 17

D.

Dacians. 76. 78. 89
Dalmatia *subdued,* 47
Damasus, *Bishop of* Rome 101
Damasus II. *Pope,* 156
Damocles *a Parasite* 35, 36
Danes 139
Daniel 11
Darius, *Son of* Hystaspes 19
Darius *the* Mede, *Son of* Astyages, *otherwise called* Cyaxares. 15, 16
Darius Nothus. 21
Darius, *the last K.* Persia 24

Darius's *Luxury* 27
David *K. of* Israel. 5
Decemviri 31
Decius, *Emp.* 83
Dec. Jun. Brutus. 50
Decretal *Epist.* 179
Demochares 35
Demosthenes. *ibid.*
Desiderius, *K. of the* Lombards. 130
Dicæarchus 34
Diocletian, *Emp.* 89
Dionysius, *Tyrant of* Syracusa 35
Dissentions *among the* Greek *and* Latin *Churches.* 176
Dissentions *between the* French *and* English 191
Donation *of* Constantine 93
Drusus 74

E.

EBurones 137
Edward III. *K. of* England. 191, 192
Eginhardus, *Secretary to* Charlemagne 141
Elect. *of Emp.* 153
Ennius's *Nativity* 38
— *His Death* 47
Epaminondas 23
Esaias *Proph.* 9
Eucherius, *Son of* Stilico 104
Eugenius IV. *Pope* 197
Eulalius, *Bishop of* Carthage 117
Eustachius's *Heresie* 94
Evilmerodach, *Son of* Nebuchodonosor 15
Eutyches 109
Exarchate 119
Explication *of* Daniel's *Prophecy of the 4 Beasts.* 202
Ezechias, *King of* Juda 9

F.

FAbius Maximus, 38 51
Faliscans 37, 38
Favemia 129
Ferdinand, *King of* Spain 199
Fl. Claudius, *Emp.* 86
Fl. Domitianus. 78
Fl. Priscus, *a Lawyer* 57
Florentinus, *a Lawyer* 81
Formosus, *Pope.* 147
Forum Julii. 141
Forum Livii. 129
Forum Populi. *ib.*
France 137
Francis I. *King of* France 200
Franks, Germans, 88. 136
Frederick *of* Lorain, *created Pope.* 157
Frederic *Count Palatine* 162
Frederic Barbarossa, *Emp.* 172
Frederic II. 175
Frederic III. 198
— *Duke of* Austria 189
Furnius, *a Poet.* 75
Fuscus, *a Poet.* *ib.*

G.

GAleacius, *Duke of* Milan. 195
Galerius, *Emp.* 90
Galli Senones. 32, 33
Gallia Belgica, *or Low-Countries.* 141. 147
Gallia Celtica. 61
Gauls *subdued by the* Romans 61
— *Revolt* 77, 78
Gallienus, *Emp.* 85
Gallus Hostilianus. 83
Gelasius, *Bishop of* Rome 111
Gelasius II. *Pope.* 170
Genfericus, *King of the* Vandals. 108
Genfericus, *King of the* Goths 104
Gepidæ 116
Germans. 74 76 135
Germanicus, *the Son of* Drusius. 74
Getæ 112
Gibellins 187
Godfrey *of* Bulloign 169
Golden *Bull* 200
Gordianus, *Emp.* 82
Gorgias 35
Goths. 26. 100. 103, 104, 105. 122
they take Rome. 104

Gradus, *a City.* 141
Gratian 124
Gratian, *Emp.* 100
Græcian *Empire the third Monarchy.* 25
Gregory I. *Bishop of* Rome. 120
Gregory II. *Pope.* 127
——III. 128
——IV. 146
——V. 153
——VI. 155
——VII. 161
——IX. 177
——XI. 196
——XII. *Ibid.*
Guelphs *and* Gibellins 187

H.

HAla 67
Hannibal. *See* Anniba.
Hedui 61. 136
Heliogabalus. 81
Helleſpont 19
Helvetians 60
Henry *the Proud, D. of* Bavaria. 171
Henry I. *King of* France 157
Henry *the Falconer, Emperor* 149
Henry II. *Emp.* 154
——III. 155
——IV. 157
——V. 169. 171
——VI. 174
——VII. 187
Heraclides 34
Heraclitus, *Emp.* 121
Hermogenianus, *a Lawyer* 81
Hermocrates *of* Syracuſe 21
Herod Agrippa. 77
Herod Antipas. *ib.*
Herod *the Great.* 72. 75
Herodotus 20
Heruli 110
Hetrurians 37
St. Hireom 101
— *Of* Prague. 197
Hildebrand, *King of the* Goths. 115
Hippias 35
Homer 26. 29
Honorius, *Emp.* 100
Honorius III. *Pope.* 177
Horace, *Poet.* 75
Hunns. 99, 100. 105. 112
Hungarians *invade* Pannonia. 147
Hugh, *King of* Italy. 148
Hyperides 35
Hyſtaſpes 18

I.

JAcob, *Patriarch* 5
Jagello, *King of* Poland, *called* Uladiſſaus. 193
St. James *the Apoſtle, his Death.* 77
Janiculum 54
Jechoniah, *King of* Juda 10
Jeruſalem *taken by* Nebuchodonoſor 11
—*Rebuilt* 17
—*Storm'd by* Pompey 60
Jeruſalem *ruin'd by* Veſpaſian. 78
Jeſus Chriſt *born.* 72
— *Crucified* 76
Ignatius, *Bp. of* Conſtantinople. 146
Illyrians 38. 74
— *Subdued by* Auguſtus 74
Innocent I. *Biſhop of* Rome 102
Inno. II. *Pope.* 171
——III. 175
——IV. 182
——VI. 191
Inſubrians 38
Invention *of the Art of Printing.* 198
St. John Baptiſt's *Death* 77
John, *King of* Bohemia 187
John, *Biſhop of* Placentia 153
John, *Son of* Philip *the Bold, Duke of* Burgundy. 194
John, *Son of* Philip *of* Valois, *King of* France 200
S. John *the Evangeliſt* 92
S. John Chryſoſtom 102
John, *Biſhop of* Conſtantinople. 120
John Galeacius, *created Duke of* Milan 195
John I. *Biſhop of* Rome 113
John VIII. *Pope.* 147

John

John XII. 151
——XVII. 153
——XXII. 189.196
——XXIII. 155
John Huſs 197
Jovinian, *Emp.* 99
Irene, *Empreſs.* 130
Iſaac 5
Iſabel, *Queen of* England 191
Iſocrates 35
Iſraelites *departure out of* Egypt. 5.
--*Their Bondage. ib.*
Italy 200, *&c.*
Juba, *King of* Mauritania 66
Judea *Tributary to the* Romans. 60
Judges *of* Iſrael. 10
Jugurtha, *King of* Numidia 53
Julian, *Emp.* 96, 97
Julius I. *Pope.* 97
—— II. 145
Julius Vindex. 77
Jupiter Belus 4
—— *His Temple at* Jeruſalem 79
Juſtinian, *Emp.* 114
Juſtinian's Code 116
Juſtinian II. *Emp.* 125
Juſtin I. *Emp.* 113
——II. 115
Juſtus Calliſtratus, *a Lawyer* 81
Juvenal, *Poet* 78

K

Kingdom *of* Medus 4
Kingdom *of* Moſcus *Ibid.*
Kingdom *of* Naples 184

L

Labaſſardach, *K. of* Babylon. 14
Lacedemonians *League with the K. of* Perſia. 22
Ladiſlaus Chunus, *K. of Hungary.* 184
Ladiſlaus, *Son of the Emp.* Albert. 199
Lamech 3
Laomedon 28
Lombards 118
Lombardy. 173. 200
Latium 29
Laws *of the* Gracchi 45
——*Brought out of* Greece *to* Rome 31
—*Of* Jul. Cæſar. 67
—*Of* Sylla 56
Legions *of the* Roman *Empire.* 75
Leo Armenius, *a* Grecian *Emp.* 143
Leo I. *Emp.* 109, 110
—IV. 130
Leo I. *Bp. of* Rome 107
—II. *Epiſtles.* 124
—III. 131
—VIII. *Decrees.* 151
—IX. 156
Leonidas 22
Leontines 21
Leontius, *Emp.* 125
Leoſthenes 23
Leotychides. *ibid.*
Lewes, *King of* Germany 141
Lewes, *Emp. Son of* Charlemagne. *ib.* & 143
Lewes II. *Emp.* 145
—III. *Emp. Sirnamed the ſtammerer* 147
—IV. *Emp.* 189
—IX. *K. of* France 182
—XII. *K of* France 195
Lewes, *Duke of* Orleans 194
Lotharius, *Emperor* 144, 145
Luithod. *Son of the Emp.* Otho. 150
L. Catiline. 59, 60
Ludolph, *Duke of* Bavaria 172
Luſitania 43. 50
Lyſias 35. 48
Lyſimachus 28
Lyſippus 26

M

Macedonia *made a Province.* 47
Macedonius's *Hereſie* 101
Macer, *a Lawyer.* 80
Macrinus, *Emp.* 81
Magnentius 95
Magnus, *Duke of* Saxony 162
Mahomet's *Birth* 119
Mahomet, *Son of* Amurath, *Emp. of the* Turks 198
Mahomet II. 132
Majorianus, *Emperor* 109
Mamelus,

Mamelus, *King of* Babylon 7
Mamitus, *King of* Babylon *Ibid.*
Manaſſes, *King of* Iſrael 8
Mantaleus, *King of* Babylon 7
Mancius, *Conſ.* 50
Manius Curius Dentatus 37
Manius Glabrio. 43
Marcellus 38
Marcellus, *Biſhop of* Rome 90
Marcomani. 80. 86
M. Antonius *the Orator* 56
M. Antonius *the Colleague of* Cæſar. 67. 71, 72, 73
M. Antoninus Philoſophus, *Emp.* 79
M. Attilius Regulus 37
M. Cocceius Nerva, 76
M. Cor. Cethegus 48
M. Craſſus 62
M. Furius Camillus 32
M. Lepidus, *Prætor* 64. 72
M. Liv. Salinator. 41
M. Manlius 32
M. Perpenna 51
M. Porcius Cato. 23. 38. 66
M. Tullius Cicero's *Birth* 53
M. Val. Corvinus. 33
Marrucini 53
Marſeilles *beſieged by* Cæſar 64
Marſi 53
Martial, *a Poet.* 78
Martian, *Emperour,* 106. 108
Martin V. *Pope.* 197
Maſſaniſſa, *King of* Numidia 47
Maurice, *Emp.* 119
Maximinian, *Emp.* 90
Maximinus, *Emp.* 90, 91
Maximilian, *Emp.* 199
Maximinus, *Emp.* 81, 82
Maximus, *a Lawyer* 81
Menander, *a Lawyer* *Ibid.*
Menapii 137
Menna, *Patriarch of* Conſtantinople, 116
Merodach, *Governor of* Babylon. 10
Meſſala, *Poet.* 75
Methuſalah 2
Metropolitan *Cities* 141
Michael, Grecian *Emp.* 146
Miltiades 18. 22
Minturnæ 54
Mithridates 53. 57, 58, 59
Modeſtinus, *a Lawyer* 81
Monarchy I. 14
——— II. 17
——— III. 25
——— IV. 29
Mœſia 82
Morini 137
Moſes 5
Myſia. 76. 83, 84. 110. 119

N.

NEbuchodonoſor 10, 11, 13, 14
—*His Power* 13
—*His Dream.* 11, 12
—*His Pride* 14
Nævius, *Poet* 45
Narſes, *King of* Perſia 89
Narſes, *Eunuch.* 115. 118
Nero Claudius Cæſar 77
Nerva Cocceius, *Emp.* 68
Nervii 137
Neſtorius's *Hereſie* 103
Nicene *Council.* 93
Nicephorus, *Emp.* 130. 132. 140
Nicias 22
Nicholas I. *Pope, his Epiſtles to the Emperor* Michael. 146
Nicholas II. *Pope.* 157
——— V. 198
Nicomedes, *King of* Bithynia. 53. 57
Nicopolis 193
Niger 80
Nimrod, *firſt King of* Babylon, *the mighty Hunter, called* Saturn *by others* 3, 4
Ninus 4

Noah. 3. *Died.* 5
Normans 139
Numerianus 89

O.

OCean, Britiſh, 145
Ochus 24
Odenatus, *King of* Syria 87
Odoacer 110
Oreſtes, *a Noble Roman* *ibid.*
Otho, *Emp.* 148, 149
—II. 150
—III. 151
—IV. 175
—*Prince of* Saxony 148
—*Duke of* Bavaria 162
Ottocarus, *King of* Bohemia 184
Ottoman, *Founder of the* Turkiſh *Monarchy* 182

P.

PAcuvius, *Poet.* 51
Palmyra 87
Pandectæ 116
Pannonii 74
Papacy *threefold* 196
Papinianus *ſlain.* 80
Papyrius Fronto. 81
Parma 129
Parthians 76. 78, 79. 84
Parthian *War.* 62. 79
Paſchal, *Pope.* 144
——II. 169
Paulus, *a Lawyer.* 81
Paulus Anazatus 108
Pauſanias, *a Lacedemonian General* 20. 22
Pelagius II. *Biſhop of* Rome 120
Peligni 53
Peloponneſian *War* 20. 22
Pentapolis 93
Peluſium 10
Pericles 21, 22
Pepin 129. 137
Perſeus, *King of the Macedonians* 47
Perſian *Empire deſtroyed* 24
Perſians 94. 97. 114. 120
Perſius, *Poet* 78
Petrarcha 197
Petrelus 64
Peter, *King of* Hungary 155
S. Peter, *Apoſtle.* 92
Phalaris, *Tyrant.* 49
Phalerius Demetrius 35
Pharnaces, *Son of* Mithridates 65
Philippicus Bardanes, *Emp.* 126
Philip, *Emp.* 175
——*The Strong, D. of* Burgundy. 200
——*Father of* Charles *the Fifth* 199
——*King of the Macedonians.* 43 47
——I. *K. of* France 168, 169
——*The Fair, King of* France 187, 188
Philip *of* Valois. 191
——Maria *of* Milan 197
Philopœmen 23
Phocas, *Emp.* 119, 120
Photius, *Biſhop of* Conſtantinople, 146
Phrygia 53
Phut Aſſur, *Sirnamed* Tiglath Pilleſer 8
Picentes 53
Picts 104, 105
Piſiſtratus 30
Placentia 129
Plato 34
Plautus 45
Plotius, *Poet* 75
Polydorus Spartanus 22
Polemo 33
Pollio, *Poet* 75
Pomponius, *a Lawyer* 81
Popes *See tranſlated to* Avignon. 188
Primacy *of the Pope* 120
Probus, *Emp.* 88
Prodicus, 35
Prodigies *at* Rome 59, 68
Protagoras, 35
Pruſias, *King of* Bithynia 45
Ptolemey Auletes, *K. of* Egypt. 62
Ptolemey Dionyſius 64
Ptolemey Epiphanes 42
Ptolemey

Ptolemey Philadelphus *commended*, 20
Ptolemey Philometor 46
P. Alpheus Varus, *a Lawyer* 56
P. Clodius 61, 62
P. Cornelius Scipio *dies* 45
P. Corn. Scipio *the younger.* 39. 41, 42
P. Corn. Nasica. 47
P. Scipio Africanus 38. 45. 51
P. Scipio Æmilianus 48
Pupienus & Balbinus, *Emp.* 82
Pyrenean *Mountains* 140
Pyrrhus, *King of* Epirus 36
Pythagoras 30
Python 28

Q.

Quadi 80
Quintilius Varus 74
Q. Cæcilius Metellus 52
Q. Catulus, *Orator*, 54. 56
Q. Fabius Maximus 39. 42
Q. Hortensius 53. 71
Q. Luctatius Catulus 38
Q. Mucius Scævola 56
Q. Sertorius 57
Q. Tullius Cimber 67

R.

Ravenna 131. 129. 141
Return *of the Jews from the Captivity of* Babylon. 17
Rhegia 129
Rheti 74
Rhodes 78. 122
Robert, *K. of* France 153, 154
Roderic, *K. of* Spain 126
Roger, *K. of* Sicily 171
Roman *Empire, the Fourth Monarchy* 28. 69
Roman *Consuls.* 30
Rome *built.* 29. *taken.* 104. 108. *spoiled* 108. 123.
Romulus 29
Rudolph *of* Habspurg, *Emp.* 184
Rudolph *of* Schwaben 168
Ruffinus, *Lawyer.* 81
Ruteni 51

S.

SAbatius, *King of the* Sagæ 4
Saguntum 39
Salassians 74
Salmanasser 9
Salvius Julianus, *a Lawyer* 79
Samnites 37. 53
Sapores, *King of* Persia 82. 85
Saracens. 120, 121. 125, 126. 148
Saracer, *Son of* Sennacherib 10
Sardanapalus, *King of* Babylon. 7, 8
Sardinia 38
Sarmatians 76. 78. 80. 88
Saul, *King of* Israel 5
Saxons. 99. 138
Saxon *War* 138
Sciri 110
Scots 104, 105
Scithians. 83, 84. 86. 99. 120
Seleucus, *King of* Syria 28
Semiramis 10
Sennacherib 9
Seneca 78
Sept. Severus, *Emperor* 80
Sergius Galba 77
Sertorius 57
Servius, *Poet* 75
Servius Tullus, *K. of* Rome 30
Serville, *Tumult in* Sicily 50
Sestus 19
Severus. 90. 109
Sextus Papyrius, *a Lawyer* 56
Sextus Pompeius 66
Sigismund, *Emp.* 196
Silius Italicus. 78
Sirochus, *King of* Persia 121
Socrates 34
Solon 30
Solyman, *Emperor of the* Turks 132
Sophocles, *Tragical Poet* 21

Sparetus, *King of* Babylon 7
Speusippus 34
Sphærus, *King of* Babylon 7
Spurius Manlius, *or* Mutius 32
Sp. Posthumius Albinus 34
Statius, *Poet* 78
S. Stephen, *Martyr* 91
Stephen, *King of* Hungary 154
Stephen II. *Pope*, 129
——IV. 143
——IX. 157
Stilico 101. 104
Strato 34
Sueſſiones 137
Suevians 73. 137
Sylverius, *Biſhop of Rome* 118
Sylveſter, *Biſhop of* Rome. 114
Sylveſter III. *Pope*, 155
Symmachus, *Biſhop of* Rome 111
Synod *of* Orleans, 113
Synod *of* Conſtance 197
Synod *of* Conſtantinople VI. 124
Synod *of* Epheſus, 103
Synod *of* Gengræ, 94
Synod *of* Lateran, 176
Syn. *of* Lyons, 182
Synod *of* Mentz, 140, 141
Syn. *of* Reims. 140
Syn. *of* Baſil 197
Synod *of* Carthage, 102. 117
Synod *of* Nice. 93
Syn. *of* Toledo IV. 122
Syn *of* Triburie. 148
Syn. *of* Tours. 141
Syn. *of* Vienne. 189
Syracuſe *deſcribed*, 40
Storm'd. 39. 123
——*Haven* 22
Syracuſans 21

T.

TAcitus, *Emp.* 88
Tarpeian *Rock* 32
Tarquinus Collatinus 30
Tarquinus Superbus *ibid.*
Tarruntius Paternus, *a Lawyer.* 80
Tartars 99
Taſſilo, *Duke of* Bavaria 139
Taurus, *Mount.* 44
Templars *ſlain* 188
Terentius Clemens, *a Lawyer* 80
Terentius, *Poet.* 51
Tertullianus, J.C. 79
Thebes 24
Themiſtocles 20, 21, 22
Theodatus, *King of the* Goths 115
Theodora, Juſtinian's *Wife.* 116. 118
Theodoricus, *King of the* Goths. 106
Theodoricus, *King of the* Oſtrogoths 111. 113
Theodoſius, *Emperor* 100, 101
Theodoſius II. *Son of* Arcadius, *Emp.* 103
Theodoſius III. 126
Theodoſian *Code*, 116
Theophraſtus 34
Thucydides 21
Tiberius Cæſar. 76
Tiberius Nero. *ib.*
Tiberius II. *Emperor* 119
Tiberius III. 125
Tib. Gracchus. 51, 52
Ticinum 39
Tiglath-Pileſſer. 8
Tigris *River the bounds of the* Roman *Empire.* 121
Tigranes, *King of* Armenia 58
Tiſſaphernes 22
Titius Cælius, *a Lawyer* 56
Titus Veſpaſianus, *Emp.* 78
T. Annius Milo. 62
T. Manlius Torquatus 33
Totila, *King of the* Goths 115
Traſimenian *Lake* 39
Trebellius, *King of* Bulgaria 126
Tribonius,

Tribonianus, *a Famous Lawyer.* 166
Triumvir. *of* Rome 71
Tryphonius, *a Lawyer* 81
Trojan *War.* 29
Turks *and* Turkish *Empire* 132
Turrianus, *Governor of* Milan 188
Tuscianus, *a Lawyer* 79
Typography *invented* 198
Tyridates, *King of* Armenia 84

V.

VAlens, *Emp.* 99
Valentinian, *Emp.* *ibid.*
Valentinian, *Son of* Honorius's *Sister*, *Emp.* 104
Valentinian, *Son of* Gratian 100
Valerianus, *Emp.* 85
Valgius, *Poet* 75
Vandals 80
Varius, *Poet* 75
Vascones, *or* Gascoigns 139
Ubii 74
Vejentes 37
Venice *built* 107
Venuleius Celsus, *a Lawyer* 81
Vesontio 61. 141
Vespasian, *Emp.* 78
Vespers *of* Sicily, 186
Vestini 53
Vicounts *of* Milan 200
Victor II. *Pope.* 157
——III. 168
Vicenne, *a Town of* France 75
Vigilius, *Bishop of* Rome 118
Vindelici 74
Vinidius Verus, *a Lawyer* 179
Vibius Marcellus, *a Lawyer* 79
Virgil, *Poet* 75
Viriatus 49
Visci, *two Forts.* 75
Viterbo *laid waste* 178
Vitiges, *King of the* Goths 115
Uladislaus, *King of* Poland *and* Hungary 198
Ulpian, *the Disciple of* Papinian. 81
Ulpius Trajanus, *Emperor* 78
Umbrians 53
Volscian *War.* 19
Volusianus, *Emperor* 84
Urban II. *Pope.* 168
Urban VI. 196

W.

WAllis, *King of the* Goths, 104
Wandals. *ibid.*
War *of* Catiline, 59
— *between* Cæsar *and* Pompey. 63
War, Jugurthine, 52, 53
— Piratick 53
— Punic, *first.* 37, 38
— Punic, *second.* 38, 39
— Punic, *third.* 47
Welpho, *or* Guelpho, *Duke of* Bavaria 172
Wenceslaus, *Emperor* 193
Western *Emp. translated to the* Germans 131
Westphalia 74
William, *Archbishop of* Paris 182
William, *King of* Sicily 174
Worms *Convention* 163

X.

XAntippe 22
Xenocrates, *Philosopher* 27. 34
Xenophon. 23. 35
Xerxes, *what* 6
Xerxes, *Son of* Darius 19

Z.

ZAchary, *Pope*, 128
Zameis, *King of* Babylon 26
Zedekiah, *King of* Juda 11
Zeno Isauricus, *Emperor* 110
Zenobia 87
Zopyrus 18
Zosimus, *Bishop of* Rome 102

Jo. Sleidan's HISTORY Of the Four Chief Empires.

BOOK I.

BEfore I enter upon the four Chief Empires of the World; the *Babyloniſh*, *Perſian*, *Greek*, and *Roman*, 'twill be neceſſary to premiſe the variety of Opinions about the Computation of Years from the Creation, which are not to be reconcil'd; for the *Hebrews*, *Euſebius*, *Alphonſus*, and *Mi-*

randula extreamly disagree; but I shall follow the Account of the *Hebrews*, with the Learned of our Age.

The years from the Creation to the Birth of Christ, are numbred by the

Hebrews	*Talmudical*	3784.
	Modern Rabins	3760.
	Josephus	4102.
Grecians	*Metrodorus*	5000.
	Eusebius	5990.
	Theophilus	5476.
Latins	St. *Hierom*	3941.
	St. *Austin*	5351.
	Isiodorus	5210.
	Bede	3970.
Moderns	*Alphonsus*	5984.
	Picus Mirandula	3970.
	Others	3962.

See *Gilbert Genebrar*, in his Book of Chronology.

But to come to the purpose; that is, the first of the four Empires: I shall begin with the end of the Deluge, when the Waters being dissipated, and the Earth again dry and habitable, the small Remains of *Humane Race* began once more to increase and multiply, omitting the first Age of the World, and the Account of the Flood, those things being not to be related better than they are already found in the *Holy Scriptures*.

The *Deluge* happen'd in the Year of the World 1656, when *Methusalem*, being the seventh

ſeventh from *Adam*, dyed in the nine hundred and ſixty ninth year of his Age: *Noah* his Grandſon, by his Son *Lamech*, then ſix hundred years old, was preſerv'd with his Family by the peculiar mercy of God: Who upon the increaſe of Mankind, directed his Children, and in them Poſterity, to divide themſelves to ſeveral Regions, there to Manure the Ground, and build Cities; and about the hundredth year after the Flood he diſtributed by Lot to each their ſeveral Country.

In which time *Nimrod*, the great Grandſon of *Noah*, with his followers, took Poſſeſſion of the Country of the *Chaldeans*. And when at laſt men grew ſo numerous, that moſt of them were oblig'd to ſeparate, and go in ſearch of their ſeveral new Habitations and Colonies, they agreed to leave a perpetual Monument of themſelves; and therefore under the Conduct of *Nimrod* they began to build a City, and in that a Tower of prodigious height, forgetful of the Divine Wrath, which had ſo lately drown'd the whole Univerſe, and which without doubt *Noah* had diligently, and often inculcated into them, they deſign'd to tranſmit their Fame to Poſterity, by ſuch a proud and ambitious performance.

With which God being offended, diſappointed all their Reſolutions, by ſending among them a Confuſion of Tongues; for till then there was but one Language common to all: But being thus forc'd to deſiſt from the

Work they had begun, they ſeparated into ſeveral parts of the World.

From this Confuſion of Tongues the City took its Name, and was called *Babel*; and from that time, that is, from the Year after the Flood 131, is counted the beginning of the Kingdom of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*.

The firſt King was *Nimrod*, who Reigned fifty ſix years; the Scripture calls him a ſtrong and mighty Hunter, attributing to him *Force* and *Power*.

Others call him *Saturn*, and ſay, that in the forty fifth year of his Reign, he ſent into ſeveral Parts, *Aſſur*, *Medus*, *Magog*, and *Moſcus*, Heads of ſo many diſtinct Colonies, each of which eſtabliſhed Kingdoms of his own Name; that is, *Aſſyria*, *Media*, *Magog*, and *Moſcus*, *Muſcovy*; the two firſt of which are entirely in *Aſia*, the two laſt are on the Confines of *Aſia* and *Europe*, and belong to both.

Jupiter Belus, the Son of *Nimrod*, ſucceeded him, who poſſeſſed himſelf of all that Tract of Land which reached to the Weſtward as far as the *European Sarmatia*, and then made War with *Sarbatius*, King of the *Sagarans*, a People inhabiting the Banks of the River *Sagaris*; but he was prevented by Death from making a Conqueſt there, though his Son *Ninus* effected it, and extending his Power on every ſide, ſet up the firſt Monarchy.

Three

Three hundred years after the Flood *Noah* dyed, and about eighteen years after, *Abraham*, being the tenth in a direct Line from *Noah*, left his Native Country by the Command of God, when he was seventy five years old. Twenty four years after which, God made a Covenant with him by the Circumcision. When he was an hundred years of Age his Son *Isaac* was born, after which he lived seventy five years, the length of man's Life being now very much shortned.

The History of his Grandson *Jacob*, the occasion of his going into *Ægypt*, his death there, and how his Posterity for several Ages suffered a cruel Slavery there, and was delivered by the favour of God, under the Conduct of *Moses*, is given us at large in the Holy Scriptures.

This Migration of the Children of *Israel* out of *Ægypt* was in the Year of the World 2454, that is, according to St. *Paul*, four hundred and thirty years after the Promise given to *Abraham*.

After *Moses*, the Children of *Israel* were Governed by their Judges, till the time of *Saul*, who was succeeded by *David*, the second King of that People.

But to return to the Empire of *Babylon*, after the death of *Ninus*, his Wife *Semiramus* assumed the Diadem, whose Victories, Triumphs, and Treasures were not inferiour to any of the Mighty of the Earth. She enlarged the City of *Babylon* from a Town to a

bigneſs worthy that Name, adorn'd it with various Noble Edifices, and ſurrounded it with a Wall.

She conquer'd *Æthiopia*, and bore her Arms into *India* it ſelf.

Her Son *Zameis*, the fifth in Succeſſion, perform'd nothing worthy of memory; but his Succeſſor *Arius* joyn'd the *Bactrians* and *Caſpians* to his Empire.

Hiſtory gives us no particular Account of the Actions of his Succeſſor *Atalius*, though it celebrate him for a great Warriour, and one well skill'd in Military Affairs.

Baleus, the next but one to him, ſubdu'd a great many Nations, and extended the Bounds of his Empire as far as *India*, for which he merited the Name of *Xerxes*, which ſignifies the Conquerour, Triumphant, or Warriour.

Amatrites, the Ninth King of *Babylon*, was entirely devoted to Eaſe and Pleaſure.

There is nothing ſaid of the Tenth King, *Belochus*, but that he was ſtudious in Auguries and Divinations.

The Eleventh King, *Baleus*, has the eſteem of being ſecond to none but *Semiramis* in Warlike Vertues and Exploits; and was very much celebrated in the Writings of the Learned.

Alcadas, the Twelfth King, prefer'd Eaſe and Tranquility of Life to the Glories of War, becauſe he judg'd it fooliſh to harraſs his days with Labour, and perplex his mind with various

rious Cares, merely for the extending the Bounds of his Dominion, ſince that conduced not at all to the happineſs and ſafety of Mankind, but on the contrary, to the Ruin and Slavery of many.

His Succeſſor, *Mamitus*, being the Thirteenth King, revived the Warlike diſpoſitions of his People, ſo that his Power grew ſuſpected to the *Syrians* and *Ægyptians*.

There is nothing certain to be ſaid of *Mantaleus*, the Fourteenth King.

Sphærus, the Fifteenth King, is fam'd for his great Vertue and Wiſdom.

There is no mention made of any Action of *Mamelus*, the Sixteenth King.

In the time of *Sparetus*, the Seventeenth King, Hiſtory aſſures us that there happened many and frequent Prodigies.

The Eighteenth King, *Aſcatades*, ſubdu'd all *Syria*.

Thus far I have followed *Beroſus*, wanting a better Guide in this part of my Hiſtory; though I am ſenſible his Writings, which we now have, are not of much Authority, moſt eſteeming them ſpurious.

Others reckon from this to *Sardanapalus*, the Thirty Eighth King of *Aſſyria*, Twenty more.

Sardanapalus was the moſt Luxurious and Effeminate of Princes, paſſing his time continually in the Company and Converſation of Women; he ſeem'd transform'd into their Sex, affecting Spinning, and other Fe-

male Exercises; and was so entirely attach'd to Pleasures, that he could divorce himself but very seldom from them, to shew himself in Publick. This sordid Life disgusted *Belochus* and *Arbaces*, two Governours under him of *Babylon*, and *Media*, who entring into a Conspiracy against him, as soon as they had rendred him odious to the People, by exposing his Baseness and degenerate Effeminacy, proceeded to open Hostilities. *Sardanapalus* having lost the Battle, to which after long delays he went with his dissolute and enervate Forces, fled back to his Court, and having there made a Pile of all his Treasures, and set it on fire, he threw himself into it; in this alone, as an Author observes, imitating a Man.

These two Governours divided the Monarchy betwixt them, *Belochus* being made King of *Babylon*, and *Arbaces* King of the *Medes* and *Persians*.

Sardanapalus was thus the last King of the *Assyrians* of that Race, when that Monarchy had continued 1300 Years, for most of the Kings lived to great Ages.

Belochus was the Thirty ninth King of the *Assyrians*, or rather the first of the new Monarchy; he made *Manasses* King of *Israel* Tributary to him, but the Holy Scripture calls him *Phul*, not *Belochus*.

Phul Assur, sirnam'd *Tiglath Pilleser*, succeeded him, and took several Cities in *Judea*, and carry'd the People away Captive into *Assyria*;

Aſſyria; this is the *Tiglath*, to whom *Achas*, King of *Juda*, (in whoſe Reign *Iſaiah* lived) ſent Preſents, and an Embaſſy, to implore his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Syrians*.

Salmanaſſer ſucceeded *Tiglath*, and took the City of *Samaria*, after a Siege of three years, and carryed away *Hoſhea*, King of *Iſrael*, and his People, and gave them Habitations in his own Dominion, in *Media* it ſelf, as the Holy Scripture aſſures us: From whence ſome are of Opinion that the *Medes* were ſubject to him too.

His Succeſſor was *Sennacherib*, whoſe *Metropolis* and Reſidence was *Ninive*; he laid a Pecuniary Mulct upon *Hezekiah*, King of *Juda*, and then beſieged *Jeruſalem* with a vaſt Army: And ſending an Embaſſy to the People, he exhorted them to deſert their King, whom he laugh'd at for expecting help and relief from his God; but he enjoyed not long the ſatisfaction of his Raillery, for the Angel of God deſtroyed one hundred fourſcore and five thouſand men of his Army in one Night, which God had before promiſed *Hezekiah*, by his Prophet *Iſaiah* to perform.

From whence returning home, he was ſlain by his own Children.

The *Babylonians*, from the defeat of *Sardanapalus*, till this time, were ſubject to the *Aſſyrians*: But after *Sennacherib* had had ſo great a blow at the Siege of *Jeruſalem*, and was ſoon after murder'd by his own Children, as I have ſaid, the face of things receiv'd

ceiv'd a great change, and the Kingdom was divided; for the two Brothers, *Adramelech* and *Saraſar*, who had committed this Paricide, fled away, but yet endeavoured to raiſe Men againſt their Brother *Aſſaradon*, who after their Father's death, had taken Poſſeſſion of the Throne, for he adminiſtred Affairs before in the abſence of *Sennacherib*.

This Opportunity offering it ſelf, *Merodach*, the Governour of *Babylon*, rebelled, and Declaring War, having won by degrees the Neighbouring Nations, partly by force, and partly by fair means to his ſide, in the Twelfth Year of his Reign, having overcome *Aſſaradon*, tranſlated the whole Empire of the *Aſſyrians* to *Babylon*, and reigned forty years afterward.

Some Authors will have *Ben Merodach*, and *Nebuchodonoſor*, the firſt of that Name, ſucceed him; but ſince the *Holy Scriptures* are ſilent in this matter, and thoſe Authors are of little Credit, I ſhall place that *Nebuchodonoſor*, mentioned in the Bible, next to *Merodach*. This Prince, from the beginning of his Reign had War with the *Ægyptians*, and took from them all that Province which reaches from *Euphrates* to *Peluſium*.

He made *Jeboiakim*, King of *Judah*, Tributary to him, and in the eighth year of his Reign he carryed away Captive to *Babylon* his Son King *Jechoniah*, with the Principal Men

Men, and Citizens, not only of *Jeruſalem*, but alſo of all the Kingdom of *Judah*.

In the Eighteenth Year of his Reign, after a Siege of two Years, he took *Jeruſalem*, plunder'd, and burnt it, levell'd the Walls, put out the Eyes of King *Zedekiah*, and killed his Sons, and Nobles, and carryed away the greateſt part of the People Captive. This Calamity the Prophet *Jeremiah* had foretold in the firſt Year of the Reign of *Nebuchodonoſor*. From this time we muſt reckon the Seventy Years of the *Babyloniſh* Captivity.

About the Twenty fourth Year of his Reign, *Nebuchodonoſor* having overcome the Kings of the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, led his Army into *Ægypt*, and having ſubdued the whole Country, began the *Monarchy*.

In the ſecond Year of the *Monarchy*, according to the Account of the Learned Men of our Age, in a Dream he ſaw a Prodigious Statue, whoſe Head was Gold, Breaſt and Arms Silver, Belly and Thighs Braſs, Legs of Iron, part of its Feet Iron, and part Earth. Being wak'd, though he could not remember his Dream, yet he was extreamly diſturb'd with it; therefore he Summons all his Prophets and Diviners, and commands them on pain of Death to diſcover to him what his Dream was. When this Edict of the King's was known, *Daniel*, a Young Man, that was brought from *Jeruſalem* among the Priſoners of War, declar'd that he could gratifie the King's

King's Curioſity: And being introduced into the Preſence, he firſt diſcover'd what the Dream was, and then Interpreted what it did portend. He ſaid, that the Statue the King had beheld in his ſleep, repreſented the Four Chief *Monarchies*, that were to ſucceed one another: And then turning his Diſcourſe to the King himſelf, he ſaid, *'Tis you whom God has adorn'd with Power and Glory, and to you he has given the Government of all Mankind, of the Beaſts of the Field, and the Birds of the Air; and you are the Golden Head of the Statue you have ſeen in your ſleep. After you ſhall riſe an Empire of Silver, that is leſs Noble, than yours; That ſhall be ſucceeded by a third of Braſs, whoſe Dominion ſhall extend it ſelf on all parts very far. But the fourth Empire ſhall be of Iron, for as Iron breaks and ſubdues every thing, ſo ſhall the fourth deſtroy, and ſubject all the reſt to its ſelf.*

This therefore is the firſt Prophecy of the Four Monarchies revealed to us by *Daniel*, who knew it by Inſpiration, a thing till then wholly unheard of, and worthy of the higheſt regard imaginable. Nor ought we to forget the leaſt part of it, for in a few words it contains the Hiſtory of All Time even to its period the end of the World, as I ſhall explain hereafter. Now 'tis ſufficient to obſerve, that at this time it was that God firſt diſcover'd to us the Order and Changes of the Monarchies.

There is nothing can give us more evident and clearer view of the great Power of *Nebuchodonoſor*, than that place of *Daniel*, where the Holy Scripture compares him to a Tree, whoſe lofty boughs reached even to the Skies, and caſt its ſhadow over the whole Earth, whoſe Leaves were by much the moſt beautiful, and whoſe Fruit the moſt rich and large, which bore Food for all the Animal World, and on whoſe ſpreading Branches all ſorts of Birds built their Neſts, and reſted themſelves.

OF

OF THE

First Monarchy.

THIS was the *First Monarchy*, which as it was much increaſed and brought to its higheſt Power under this King, ſo it decayed, and was wholly exſtinguiſhed in the Reigns of his Poſterity, as God had foretold by *Daniel*, and other Prophets. *Nebuchodonoſor* reigned Forty three Years.

The ſtrange and terrible manner in which God puniſhed the Pride of this King, according to *Daniel*, deſerves to be read with conſideration by all men, eſpecially by Kings and Princes, that it may ſtrike an awe into them of the Divine Majeſty, and make them perform their Duty toward the People committed to their Charge.

His Son, *Evil-merodach*, ſucceeded him, and having reigned Thirty Years, left the Throne to *Aſſur*, who enjoy'd it but three Years, and was ſucceded by *Labaſſardach*, who after ſix Years left it to *Balthaſar*, whoſe Reign continued but five Years.

In this order ſome number them: But the Learned Men of our Age, leaving out the other two, make *Balthaſar* ſucceed his Father

ther *Evil-merodach*, and make his Reign continue Fourteen Years, to make up the Seventy Years of the Captivity of the *Jews* in *Babylon*, ſince the beginning of this Captivity is calculated from the Nineteenth Year of the Reign of *Nebuchodonoſor*.

Thoſe who are of this Opinion, and reject thoſe two Kings I have mentioned, back it with the Scripture, eſpecially with the Teſtimony of *Jeremiah*, who foretold that the *Jews* ſhould be in the Servitude of the King of *Babel, his Son, and his Son's Son.* But I leave this Point free to every ones Judgment to decide as he ſhall think moſt rational. But the Sacred Scripture is poſitive that *Balthaſar* was the laſt of the Kings of *Babylon*, in which all other Writers agree with it.

There is no Author that gives an Account of the Siege of *Babylon*, or how it was taken. But *Daniel* relates how God denounced the impending danger, and the preſent evil to the King; and further informs us, that *Balthaſar* being kill'd, the Empire was tranſlated to *Darius* the *Mede*, who was then Seventy two years of Age.

This *Darius* was called by Hiſtorians *Cyaxares*, the Son of *Aſtyages*, whom *Daniel* calls *Ahaſuerus*, the Eighth King of the *Medes*, and having no Male Iſſue, he eſpouſed his Daughter to *Cyrus*, a *Perſian* by birth, and his Nephew by his Siſter. And being preſs'd by War from the *Aſſyrians*, call'd in *Cyrus* to his Aſſiſtance, who being choſe General

General of the whole Expedition, finiſh'd it with the happy ſucceſs of taking the Great Metropolis of their Empire. *Darius* ſurvived this Victory but one Year.

And now after the taking of *Babylon*, before the Death of *Darius*, near the Seventieth Year of the *Jewiſh* Captivity, as *Daniel* was peruſing the Prophet *Jeremiah*, who foretold it, and Praying, God diſcover'd greater things than he had preſum'd to demand; for he not only aſſur'd him that their delivery was near, but alſo reveal'd the time when the *Meſſias* ſhould come, who ſhould ſatisfie his Juſtice for the ſins of Mankind.

After the death of *Darius*, the Crown of *Perſia* devolv'd on the Head of his Son-in-Law *Cyrus*, which is the beginning of the Second *Monarchy*. For according to *Thucydides*, the Kingdom of *Cyrus* included *Aſſyria*, *Media*, and *Perſia*, as far as the *Ionian* Sea, for before the taking of *Babylon*, he had ſubdued *Cræſus*, the moſt Potent of the Kings of *Lydia*.

THE

THE SECOND

Monarchy.

Cyrus, as I have ſaid, was the firſt King of the *Perſians*, and the Founder of the Second *Monarchy*.

After the Conqueſt of *Babylon*, he invaded the *Scythians*, where after various Events, this excellent Prince was ſurpriz'd by an Ambuſcade of the Enemy, and ſlain.

In the beginning of his Reign, after the taking of *Babylon*, he permitted the *Jews* to return home, and to rebuild the City and Temple of *Jeruſalem*, and contributed magnificently toward the Undertaking.

This *Cyrus* by name God foretold by *Iſaiah*, ſome Ages before he was born.

Xenophon repreſents him before his Death diſcourſing his Sons of the Immortality of the Soul. Which place *Cicero* has with his uſual Elegance tranſlated into *Latin*. He lived to his Seventieth Year; for he was forty years old when he came to the Crown, and reigned thirty.

Cambyſes was his Son and Succeſſor, to whom he left the Government of the King-

dom in this abſence in his *Scythian* Expedition; in which time he took *Ægypt*. He muſt be confeſs'd a great Prince in Martial Affairs, but in nothing elſe diſcovering the Vertues of ſo Noble a Father; among his other Vices, with which he abounded, with no leſs Barbarity than Baſeneſs, he commanded his own Brother to be treacherouſly murder'd.

Plato, in his Book, *De Legibus*, charges *Cyrus* with a very great overſight, in breeding up his Sons idly among Women, for by that means they were ſurrounded by Flatterers, of which each had his Train depending upon him, which, when they grew up to be Men, after their Father's death, was the cauſe that each attempted the ſafety of the other.

Darius Hytaſpis, the Son of *Cambyſes*, the ſecond King of the *Perſians*, ſoon ſucceeded him, for he did not long ſurvive the death of his Father. *Darius* began his Reign with War, and by the Stratagem of *Zopyrus* retook *Babylon*, and reunited the *Aſſyrians* again to his Dominions, who upon the Death of *Cyrus*, and the great loſs his Army had ſuſtain'd, with ſeveral other Nations, ſhook off the *Perſian* Yoke.

After this, he engaged in a War with the *Athenians*, who having muſtered their Forces together, without delaying for the promiſed Succours of the *Lacedæmonians*, routed this great Army of *Perſians* with only ten thouſand Men under the Conduct of *Miltiades*, at the Battle of *Marathon*.

Whilſt

Whilſt *Darius* was preparing to renew the War, he dyed, and left the Kingdom to his Son *Xerxes*; who Ten Years after the Battle of *Marathon*, according to *Thucydides*, invaded *Greece* with a vaſt innumerable Army, reſolving to reduce it all under his Subjection. The Conduct of the War, by univerſal conſent was given to the *Lacedæmonians*, who were then the moſt Powerful of all the *Grecian* States: But the *Athenians* following the Advice of *Themiſtocles*, forſook their City, and having ſecur'd their Wives, and Children in ſeveral places, went all a Ship-board, and in a Naval Fight, at the Iſle of *Salamis* overcame the Enemy.

This Victory was the Security of all *Greece*, for *Xerxes* being worſted by Land as well as by Sea, infamouſly fled out of *Europe*; after whoſe departure the *Grecians* returned each to their ſeveral home: But the *Athenians* being Maſters of a Fleet of near Four Hundred Ships, purſu'd the Enemy a great way, and took the Town of *Seſtos* upon the *Helleſpont*, which was in the Poſſeſſion of the *Perſians*: Where taking up their Winter Quarters, as ſoon as the Spring came, they returned home, and having got their Wives and Children together, they rebuilt their City, which the Enemy in their abſence had taken, and burnt, and repared the Walls, and fortified the Port. This *Perſian*, or as *Thucydides* calls it, this *Median*, War, *Cicero* ſays was at the ſame time of the *Volſian* Hoſtilities againſt *Rome*, in which *Co-*

riolanus, a *Roman* Exile, was concerned, which was in the Year after the Building of *Rome* 256.

This *Perſian* Expedition *Herodotus* treats of, who was older than *Thucydides*. *Cicero* calls him the Father of *Hiſtorians*, but confeſſes he writes abundance of Fabulous Stories.

The *Lacedemonians* were very much diſguſted at theſe Fortifications of the *Athenians*, but being unable to vent their diſſatisfaction any other ways, they contented themſelves with murmuring againſt it. The *Athenians* joyning all their Force, took *Cyprus*, and the City of *Byzantium*, which were in the hands of the *Perſians*.

Pauſanias was at this time one of the *Lacedemonian* Commanders, and being found Guilty of Treachery, was ſtarved to Death, being block'd up in a place he had fled to for ſafety; of which *Themiſtocles* being alſo accus'd, made his eſcape.

Greece after this was diſturb'd by ſeveral Foreign, and Civil Wars, and Diſſenſions, which *Thucydides* in ſhort relates: But Fifty Years after the departure of *Xerxes* out of *Græce* (as *Cicero* has it from *Thucydides*) that great War broke out, in which the whole *Peloponneſus* entred into a Confederacy againſt the *Athenians*, who choſe for their General *Pericles*, the Diſciple of *Anaxagoras* the Philoſopher, who, as *Ariſtophanes* ſays, by the ſubtilty of his Tongue could Thunder, and raiſe a Tempeſt that ſhould affect all *Greece*: For among the Anients

Ancients the ſame were Maſters of Vertue as well as Eloquence.

On the other ſide, *Archidamus*, King of the *Lacedemonians*, was elected General. *Thucydides* was the Contemporary, and Emulator of *Pericles*.

Cicero ſays, that *Pericles* took *Sophocles* the Tragick Poet for a Partner in his Command.

But now 'tis time to return to *Xerxes*, who was kill'd by his Subjects, who deſpis'd him for his ill Succeſs.

His Son *Artaxerxes Longimanus* ſucceeded to the Throne, and to him it was that *Themiſtocles* in his Exile (which I mention'd before) fled; who dyed, and was buried at *Magneſia*.

After *Longimanus* Reign'd *Darius Nothus*, who had marry'd *Paryſatida*, the Daughter of *Xerxes*, and Siſter of *Artaxerxes Longimanus*: But the Lawful Sons of *Longimanus* Reign'd before him. In the time of this King was this *Peloponneſian* War I have mention'd.

And tho' the *Athenians* had their hands full, yet, as *Thucydides* ſays in his Third Book, in the Fourth Year of this War they ſent a Fleet into *Sicily*, under pretence of Aiding the *Leontines* againſt thoſe of *Syracuſa*, but their real Deſign was by that means to bring that Iſland under their Juriſdiction, that ſo they might with the greater eaſe ſubdue all *Greece*. But when they often return'd, and nouriſh'd Factions there, *Hermocrates* ſo contriv'd it, that the *Sicilians* laying aſide all Animoſities, united in Peace, for the *Athenians* aim'd at the com-

mon Subverſion, and Slavery of them all; which he convinc'd them of, and gain'd his point, in the Seventh Year of this War.

Three Years after this the *Peloponneſians*, and *Athenians* made a Peace for Fifty Years, but that Agreement laſted not ſeven; for then they began to commit ſeveral Hoſtilities, without any formal breaking of the Treaty, which Injuries they often patch'd up with Truces. But in the ſeventeenth Year after the Treaty they broke out into open War, with all their utmoſt Efforts, which continu'd for Ten Years. Then the *Athenians* once more equip an extraordinary Navy, and ſend it into *Sicily*, the Chief Commanders among others were *Alcibiades*, and *Nicias*. The latter by ſeveral Orations endeavour'd to perſwade them from a Sea-Fight: But *Alcibiades* the contrary. The *Peloponneſians* ſend Relief to the *Sicilians*: And at laſt in the Haven of *Syracuſa* the *Athenians* engag'd them, but after a doubtful, and often various Fortune they were put to flight, and deſtroy'd. In the mean while the *Lacedemonians* enter into a Confederacy with *Darius* King of *Perſia*, againſt the *Athenians*: And *Tiſſaphernes* was the General for *Darius*.

Next to *Codrus*, *Polydorus*, *Spartanus*, and *Ariſtomenes* the *Meſſenian*, theſe that follow are generally eſteemed the moſt Illuſtrious of the *Grecian* Commanders, ſome of whom deſerv'd well of their own Native Countries, and others of all *Greece*. They are theſe: *Miltiades*, *Leonidas*, *Themiſtocles*, *Pericles*, *Ariſtides*, *Pauſanias*, *Xantippus*,

tippus, *Leotycidas*, *Cimon*, *Conon*, *Epaminondas*, *Leoſthenes*, *Aratus* the *Sicyonian*, *Philopœmenes*. Moſt of which were after their Services condemned to Baniſhment from the Country they had preſerv'd.

Cicero deſcribes the Port or Haven of *Syracuſa*, and ſays, that there never was any but the *Athenians* that ventur'd into it with Three Hundred Ships, and that they were overcome, and deſtroy'd there, chiefly by the Nature of the Place; and that there was the Strength and Power of *Athens* overcome, and deſtroy'd, and that there their Honour, Dominion, and Glory ſuffer'd Shipwrack.

Thucydides ſays, that the Extent of *Sicily* is as long, as a large Ship can ſail in eight days, and that it is ſeparated from the Continent Twenty Furlongs.

Darius had two Sons, *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, and *Cyrus*, the firſt after the Death of his Father ſucceeded to the Throne, and *Cyrus* was Maſter of *Ionia* and *Lydia*, but not content with that condition, he engag'd in a War with his Brother, and King, but was in it overcome, and ſlain.

Cato in *Cicero* calls this *Cyrus* the Younger King of the *Perſians*, a Man of great Senſe, and Wit, and the Glory of the Kingdom. He praiſes him too, from *Xenophon*, for his love of Husbandry. For *Xenophon* was his intimate Friend, and fought under his Standard, and for that Reaſon was baniſh'd by the *Athenians*,

who ſided with *Mnemon*. After *Mnemon* reign'd *Ochus*, the youngeſt of his three Sons.

Darius the laſt, ſucceeded *Ochus*, and was invaded by *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, who having deſtroy'd *Thebes*, and reduc'd *Greece*, paſs'd into *Aſia*, and overcame *Darius* in three Battles, taking his Mother, Wife, and Daughters.

Darius offer'd him large Conditions of Peace, that is, half his Kingdom as far as *Euphrates*, but *Alexander* refus'd it, and never reſted till he had entirely diſpoſſeſs'd him of his whole Kingdom. But when *Darius* found that he could not bring him to a Peace upon ſuch fair Propoſals, he prepar'd for a third Battle, in which, tho' he had drawn together a very ſtrong Army, he is worſted, and in his flight murder'd by his own followers: And in him the *Perſian* Monarchy ended, which had continued for more than Two Hundred Years.

By theſe prodigious Victories *Alexander* ſubdu'd almoſt all the Nations of the Eaſt, and tranſlated the Head of Empire from *Aſia* into *Europe*, and ſo began the Third Monarchy.

THE

THE THIRD

Monarchy.

AFter this he made War in the *Indies* with ſucceſs. But he could not bear this great glut of good Fortune with Moderation, ſuch is the frailty of Humane Nature. And when he had done many proud and ambitious Actions, and had diſcover'd his deſire of being ador'd as a God, he came to *Babylon*, where he dy'd of a Fever, or as ſome Hiſtorians ſay, by Poiſon; in the thirty third Year of his Age, and twelfth of his Reign.

Cicero ſays, that *Calanus* an *Indian* had foretold him his Death; for when *Alexander* ask'd him if he had any thing to ſay, when he was going into the Burning Pile. He return'd, *I ſhall ſee you in a few days*; within a little time after *Alexander* dy'd.

His Death is reckon'd in the Hundred and Tenth Olympiad, and the Four Hundred and Ninth Year after the Building of *Rome*, that is Three Hundred and Twenty Two Years before the Birth of Chriſt.

He

He very much delighted in Arts, and Sciences, and was extreamly Liberal and Generous to Learned Men, for which he is celebrated in the Writings of a great many Authors. He was a great admirer of *Homer*, and tho' he is reported to have with him many who were to write the Hiſtory of his Actions, yet when he ſtood beholding the Tomb of *Achilles* on the *Sigean* Shoar, he cry'd out, O *Fortunate Young Man, whoſe Vertue found ſo Noble a Fate, as to be commended to Poſterity by* Homer!

As he would willingly have permitted none to draw his Picture but *Apelles*, or to cut his Statue but *Lyſippus*, ſo he would only have thoſe write of him, and commend his Name to Poſterity, who had Parts enough to get a Reputation by their own Performances, and Wit, in his Praiſe.

He employ'd his Tutor *Ariſtotle*, in writing the Nature of Animals, for the compleating of which great Work, he eſtabliſh'd a great many Men to ſearch into the Natures of Cattel, Deer, and all ſorts of Game, of Fiſh both great and ſmall, Birds, and the like, who ſhould give him a particular, and exact Account of each. And that he gave to *Ariſtotle*, the compiler of this Work, as a Reward, * Eighty Talents.

---

* That is in *Engliſh* Money (ſuppoſing them to be *Attic* Talents of the leſſer ſize, for the greater were near as much again) 15147 pound.

A greater *Attic* Talent is 250 pound *Sterling*, the leſſer 187 pound.

He

He ſent *Xenocrates* the Philoſopher by his Ambaſſadors Fifty Talents; and when upon their return he was told he refus'd it, becauſe he had no occaſion for ſo much Money: *What, has he no Friends*, ſaid he, *whom he could make happy with it?*

Cicero gives this Character of him, That during his Minority, when he was the Pupil, and Diſciple of *Ariſtotle*, he was bleſs'd with a great Wit, and no leſs Modeſty; but after he came to the Crown, he grew Cruel, Proud, and Intemperate.

The Hiſtorians deliver wondrous Accounts of the Glory, Delights, and Luxury of *Darius*, for that he might not loſe any Pleaſure of the Body by the War, he had in his Camp all ſorts of Cooks, Bakers, Confectioners, and all ſuch as were Artiſts, and Maſters in the Science of Gluttony. How great even the uſual Glory, and Pomp of the other *Perſian* Kings in their daily Meals was, no Author has mention'd.

Cicero ſays, they had many Wives, on whom they ſettled ſeveral Cities, each to furniſh them with a ſeveral Ornament.

This was the Death of *Darius*, as I have related above, who when in his Flight he had drank a muddy, and filthy Water infected with rotten Carkaſſes, profeſs'd he never taſted a more pleaſant Liquor; the Reaſon was, becauſe he never drank to quench his Thirſt before.

After

After the Death of *Alexander* the Great, his Empire was divided among his Nobles, *Ptolomy*, *Laomedon*, *Antigonus*, *Caſſander*, *Leonatus*, *Eumenes*, *Python*, *Lyſimachus*, *Antipater*, *Meleager*, *Seleucus*. The Chief of which having deſtroy'd all the Relations of *Alexander*, aſſum'd their ſeveral Kingdoms. *Seleucus* that of *Syria*, *Ptolomy* of *Ægypt*, *Antigonus* of *Aſia* the leſs, *Caſſander* of *Macedon*, and *Greece*.

Lyſimachus was he, whom *Alexander* very much valued after he had kill'd the Lion to which he had commanded him to be thrown.

But among theſe Succeſſors of *Alexander*, and their Poſterity, there were great, and cruel Wars, as generally happens when Princes are made reſtleſs by Ambition, and deſire the increaſe of their Dominions, with the loſs, and deſtruction of their Neighbour. The long continuance of theſe Wars, having extreamly harraſs'd theſe Countries, they by degrees fell into the hands of the *Roman* People, who ſpreading their Victorious Eagles on every ſide, began the Fourth, and laſt Monarch, of which I ſhall now Diſcourſe.

In the number of the *Ægyptian* Kings, of the *Macedonian* Race, was *Ptolomæus Philadelphus*, an Excellent Prince; for he was a lover of Peace, and encouraged the Liberal Arts, and Sciences, collecting a large and magnificent Library; he commanded the Books of *Moſes*, and the Prophets to be tranſlated into *Greek*.

The

THE FOURTH

Monarchy.

THE Foundation of the City of *Rome* was at the ſame time when *Salamanaſſar*, of whom I have treated above, Reign'd over the *Aſſyrians*, that is, according to *Plutarch*, in the firſt Year of the ſeventh Olympiad, in the Year of the World Three Thouſand Two Hundred, and Twelve, Four Hundred Years before which *Æneas* began to Reign in *Latium*, after the *Trojan* War, which *Homer* has tranſmitted to Poſterity; the place of whoſe Nativity is of equal uncertainty with the Age in which he liv'd: All that I can ſay of him is, as *Cicero* does, that he liv'd before *Romulus*, or the Building of *Rome*.

There is no Profane Author extant of greater Antiquity than his Poems: For as *Horace* ſays,

Vixere fortes ante Agamemnona
Multi: ſed omnes illacrymabiles
Urgentur, ignotique longa
Nocte, carent quia vate ſacro. Lib. 4. Ode 9.

Cicero

Cicero is of the ſame Opinion, and ſays, that there are not the leaſt foot-ſteps of any Orator before *Homer*.

Small, and contemptible was the firſt Origin of the *Roman* People, yet, God ſo decreeing it, they grew up to be Maſters of the greateſt Power.

This City was for the firſt Two Hundred, and Forty four Years govern'd by Kings.

Cicero ſays, that in the time of *Servius Tullius*, the ſixth King of *Rome*, *Solon*, and *Piſiſtratus* flouriſh'd in *Athens*, and *Pythagoras* in *Italy*. In whoſe time alſo *Tarquin the Proud* was driven out of *Rome*.

The ſame *Cicero* is of Opinion that *Athens* had then been built Seven Hundred Years.

After the expulſion of the Kings, the Government of the Common-wealth fell into the hands of the Conſuls, whoſe Office was Annual.

Lucius Junius Brutus the firſt Conſul, was no leſs vigilant, and bold in preſerving the Liberty of *Rome*, than he had been violent, and induſtrious to exclude the Kings, and eſtabliſh'd it. For when among other young Noblemen of that City, his own two Sons, *Titus*, and *Tiberius*, had entred into a Conſpiracy to reſtore the *Tarquins*, he put them to an open and infamous Death, as ſoon as the buſineſs was diſcover'd.

He alſo diſplac'd his Colleague, *Tarquinius Collatinus*, who was his Companion in the Depoſing the Kings, and an Aſſiſtant of his Deſigns,

ſigns, and Counſels; which *Cicero* defends as a Juſt Act, and ſays, it was both Serviceable to his Country, and Honeſt to raze out the Memory of the *Tarquins*, and their *Regal Government.*

In the thirty third Year after the Expulſion of the Kings, when all *Hetruria* had entred into a Confederacy againſt *Rome*, among other Varieties of the Fortune of the *Roman* People, there went out in one day againſt the Enemy, Three Hundred of the ſame Family of the *Fabii*, and were every one ſlain, except one that ſtay'd at home by reaſon of his Minority, and Years not yet ripe for War, who afterward propagated that Illuſtrious Family again, he being the only ſurvivor of it.

In the Three Hundredth Year after the Building of *Rome*, the irregular, and turbulent ſtate of the City oblig'd them to ſend Ambaſſadors to *Greece*, to bring from thence Laws by which it ſhould be govern'd. After their return, the Form of the Government was chang'd, and the *Decemviri* were inſtituted, as the Chief Magiſtrates. But this continued not quite Three Years. For *Appius Claudius* gave occaſion to the People to abrogate, and depoſe the whole Order, by his Wickedneſs, in the Violence he offer'd to the Daughter of *Lucius Virginius*, a Citizen of *Rome*, to bring her to yield to his Luſtful Deſires.

After this Revolution, the Power return'd again to the Conſuls, tho' not for any long continuance, for the Tribunes of the People were

were ſubſtituted in their places with Conſular Authority. But they at the end of their Year laying down their Command, made way for the reſtoration of the Conſular Dignity. And at that time, which was in the Three Hundred and Fifteenth Year of the City of *Rome*, *Lucius Quintius Cincinnatus* being made Dictator, by the means of *Caius Servilius*, the Maſter of the Horſe, ſlew *Spurius Mætius*, and levell'd his Houſe to the Ground, for aſpiring to make himſelf King, by his largeſſes of Corn which he gave to the People.

Two Years after the Power return'd to the Tribunes, which were now increaſed from two to a greater number, according as the Humour of the People, or the Exigence of the Common-wealth requir'd.

This manner of Government continued almoſt Seventy Years. *Furius Camillus*, omitting the reſt, was Illuſtrious in this Order; he was inferiour to none in Vertue, and Courage; but after he had deſerved the higheſt Honour for his Services, he was ſent into Exile by his ingrateful Country, when he had been four times Tribune of the People. But having deliver'd the City from the *Gauls*, who had taken it, he was reſtor'd to his Dignity, and in two Years after made Dictator.

Not many Years before, *Marcus Manlius*, who had defended the Capitol againſt the *Gauls*, was caſt down the *Tarpeian Rock*, upon ſuſpicion that he aſpired to make himſelf King; and it was decreed, that from that time none

of

of the Family ſhould aſſume the Name of *Marcus*.

Camillus was again the ſeventh time created Tribune of the People, and dyed very old in the Three Hundred and Eighty Ninth Year after the Building of *Rome*; juſt a year before his Death the Power was reſtored once more from the Tribunes to the Conſuls, and that was the firſt time that one of the Conſuls was a Plebeian.

This Age produced theſe ſeveral Great Commanders to the City of *Rome*: *Marcus Valerius Corvinus*, *Titus Manlius Torquatus*, *Caius Martius Rutilius*, *Publius Decius Mus*, *Papyrius Curſor*, *Publius Philo*, *Lucius Volumnius*, and others.

Titus Manlius Torquatus, one of theſe I have named, when he was Conſul, commanded his Son to be beheaded for fighting with the Enemy without Orders, tho' he got the Victory.

Publius Decius Mus in the Battle againſt the *Latins* when he was Conſul, ſacrificed his Life for the ſafety of the Army of the People of *Rome*, for breaking violently in upon the thickeſt Ranks of the Enemies, by his own Death gave new Life to the Affairs of *Rome*.

His Son of the ſame Name imitated him in ſo Noble an Action forty four Years after, in the Wars againſt the *Senonian Gauls*, when he was the fourth time Conſul.

At this time, as I have already remark'd, *Alexander* the Great, the Founder of the Third Monarchy flouriſhed, and performed all his

Noble Deeds, in the Four Hundred and Twentieth Year after the Building of the City of *Rome*. *Livy* compares *Lucius Papyrius Curſor* to him, and enlarging his Diſcourſe on this Point, for the ſatisfaction of himſelf, and his Reader, demonſtrates that he among ſeveral others was able to oppoſe *Alexander*, if after he had conquered *Aſia*, he had brought his Arms into *Europe*, and invaded the People of *Rome*.

'Tis granted on all hands that this *Papyrius Curſor* was a Man of the greateſt Courage, Vertue, and Bravery. For, to paſs in ſilence all his other Actions, when the *Romans* under the Conduct of the Conſuls *Titus Veturius Calvinus*, and *Spurius Poſthumius Albinus*, were obliged to paſs ignominiouſly under the Yoke by the *Samnites*, and to make an unequal, and infamous Peace with them, he being choſen Conſul, fought and overcame the Victorious Enemy.

When he was Dictator, by the Puniſhment of his Commander of his Cavalry, he made it evident how ſeverely Military Diſcipline ought to be obſerved.

This Age, and the latter end of the laſt produced ſeveral Learned Men: For then it was that *Socrates* flouriſh'd, and all thoſe who roſe from his Learning, as from their Fountain, I mean *Ariſtippus*, *Plato*, *Antiſthenes*, *Speuſippus*, *Ariſtotle*, *Dicæarchus*, *Xenocrates*, *Heraclides*, *Theophraſtus*, *Pomleo*, and *Strato*. All Natural Philoſophers, as *Cicero* obſerves, and dili-

diligent and very curious in Enquiries into Nature.

At this time alſo flouriſhed a great many extraordinary Orators, as *Gorgias*, *Protagoras*, *Prodicus*, *Hippias*, *Iſocrates*, *Lyſias*, *Demoſthenes*, *Hyperides*, *Æſchines*, *Phalereus*, *Demetrius*, *Demochares*. In the ſame Age lived *Xenophon*, whom *Cicero* diſtinguiſhes by the Name of *Socratic*, and *Caliſtenes*, one of the Attendants of *Alexander* the Great, both Hiſtorians.

Dionyſius the Tyrant of *Syracuſa*, was contemporary with theſe, to whom when *Plato* (being prevail'd on by *Archytas* of *Tarentum* to go to his Court) with a little freedom diſcourſed of the Duty of a Prince, and King, the Philoſopher, as *Cicero* obſerves, ran no ſmall riſque of his Life in the diſpleaſure of the Tyrant.

This was the *Dionyſius*, that would not admit his Friends or Relations to Guard his Perſon, but Strangers, and Barbarians; he taught his Daughters to ſhave him, that he might not be obliged to truſt his Throat under the hands of a Barber; and fearing even them when they were grown up, removed all Razors from them, and made them ſinge his Beard and Hair off with burning Coals: He never came to bed to his Wives at Night, before he had made an exact, and through ſearch of all their Lodgings, and every little place of Bed, and Chamber. He made his Speeches from the top of a Turret, when he was afraid to do it from the uſual places. He gave his Pa-

raſite *Damocles*, a true reliſh of the Pleaſures he enjoyed, and the other had juſt praiſed, when at a Feaſt furniſhed out with all the Varieties of Art or Nature, that were neceſſary to gratifie Luxury, he commanded a naked Sword to be hung exactly over his Head by no ſtronger Security than the ſtrength of a Horſes hair.

Pyrrhus, King of *Epyrus*, fifty two Years after the Death of *Alexander* the Great, made a Deſcent into *Italy*, and engag'd in a War with the *Romans*.

In the ſecond Year of this War he endeavour'd to perſwade the Senate to conclude a Peace, and League with him, who were enclin'd to comply with his deſires, till *Appius Claudius*, who was Lame and Blind with Age, came into the Senate-Houſe, and by a Speech he made turn'd their minds. *Claudius* was a Man of that great vigour of Mind, that he would not permit his own decrepidneſs to be any hindrance to his contributing to the good of the Common-wealth, or negligent in his own private Duties. This Oration that he made was extant in the time of *Cicero*, as he aſſures us.

In this ſame War *Caius Fabricius Lucinus* did the Common-wealth a great deal of Service; for when *Pyrrhus* had endeavour'd to Corrupt him to betray his Truſt, he ſlighted both the Preſents he ſent him, and the larger Promiſes; and farther, ſent back to that King a Deſerter, that would have engag'd to have poiſon'd him.

him. *Cicero* compares him to the *Athenian Aristides.*

Nanius Curius Dentatus gave an entire Overthrow to *Pyrrhus* in his second Invasion of *Italy,* and Triumph'd for it. *Pyrrhus* was the first that brought Elephants into *Lucania*, a Country of *Italy* between *Pulia* and *Calabria.*

Till this time, that is, for Five Hundred Years, the People of *Rome* extended not their Arms beyond the Bounds of *Italy,* but were continually engag'd with some of the Inhabitants of that Tract of Land, of whom the *Latines, Vejentes, Æquians, Falisçans, Samnites,* and *Hetrurians,* made a vigorous Resistance, and with various successes, being sometimes Victors, and sometimes overcome; after which they still frequently endeavour'd to cast off the Yoke by Rebelling, but after they were now wholly subdu'd, and settled peaceably under the *Roman* Government, that long, and bloody *Carthaginian* War broke out; *Carthage* is of a much greater Antiquity than *Rome.*

This War began in the 485*th.* Year after the Foundation of *Rome,* and one of the most Remarkable Transactions of it was the Resolution of *Marcus Attilius Regulus,* which has made such a noise in History; for he being taken Prisoner by the *Carthaginians,* and sent to *Rome* to sollicit a Peace, and the exchange of Prisoners, on this Condition, that he should return again to his Bonds if he fail'd of Success in his Negotiation: But being come to the *Roman* Senate, he perswaded them to the

contrary, making that appear to be the Intereſt of the Common-wealth. After he had done this, in complyance with his Word, which he declared ought to be kept even with an Enemy, he return'd to *Carthage*, where he was put to the moſt barbarous Death imaginable, for they cut off his Eye-lids, and fixing him in a Machine for that purpoſe, made him dye for want of ſleep.

The firſt Succeſs the *Romans* had in this War at Sea was under their Conſul *Caius Duillius* againſt *Hanno*.

Cicero mentions this *Duillius* and *Manius Curius*, *Caius Fabricius*, *Attilius Calatinus*, *Cneius*, and *Publius Scipio*, *Africanus*, *Marcellus*, and *Fabrius Maximus*, as the moſt Illuſtrious *Roman* Conſuls.

The following Year *Lucius Cornelius Scipio* took *Corſica*, and *Sardinia*.

This Punic War was at laſt concluded in the Conſul-ſhip of *Q. Luctatius Catulus Cercus*, and *A. Manlius*, after it had continued Twenty Three Years.

Two Years after this *Ennius* was born, which was five before *Marcus Porcius Cato*, who calls him his Friend, and Acquaintance.

After this the *Romans* were involv'd in new Wars with the *Faliſcans*, *Ligurians*, *Illyrians*, *Gauls*, *Boians*, and *Inſubrians*.

And no ſooner had they reduc'd thoſe people, but the ſecond Punic War broke out, twenty four Years after the firſt, in the Conſul-ſhip of *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, and *Titus Sempronius*

pronius Longus. *Hannibal* was General for the *Carthaginians* in this War, and who from the Siege of *Saguntum* passing through *Spain* and *France* into *Italy*, beat the *Romans* in three successive Battles, that is, at *Ticinum*, a City of *Insubria*, now called *Dacia*, at the River *Trebia* in the *Cisalpin Gallia*, and at the *Trasymenean* Lake.

But *Quintus Fabius Maximus* being made Dictator, broke the carreer of his Victories by delaying, and avoiding Battle. This was the *Fabius* meant by *Ennius* in his Verse, *Unus homo nobis, cunctando restituit rem.*

Cicero attributes to him a Politick Cunning, and Reservedness; being a Man that could conceal and dissemble his Designs, and circumvent his Enemies, and anticipate their Counsels.

The *Romans* afterwards receiv'd a great blow at *Cannæ*, a Village in *Apulia*, which strook such a Pannick Fear into the City, that most of the Chief of *Rome* consulted how they might make their escape, and leave *Italy*: But *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, the Son of *Publius*, being then a Young Man of scarce Twenty Four Years of Age, tho' of a great, and Noble Mind, and Courage, altered their Resolutions, and obliged them to stay where they were.

Four Years after, *Marcus Claudius Marcellus*, after a long and close Siege took *Syracusa*, in the Plundring of which City *Archimedes* the Famous Mathematician was slain, who was

ſo earneſt in drawing his Mathematical Concluſion on the Ground, that he perceived not the loſs of his Country. *Marcellus* was extreamly troubled at his Death, and commanded him to be buried; and, as *Cicero* ſays, left the City not only ſafe, and untoucht, but ſo adorn'd, that it appeared to be an Eternal Monument both of his Conqueſt, and Clemency; and that the Victory of *Marcellus* brought leſs Deſtruction to the Men of that City, than the Prætorſhip of *Verres* did to the Gods. But *Livy* ſays, there were not a few Inſtances in this Structure of infamous Avarice, Cruelty, Envy, and Indignation.

An Hundred and Thirty Years after this, the Sepulchre of *Archimedes* was ſo over-grown with Briars, and Shrubs, that it was not known by the Inhabitants themſelves, till *Cicero*, then Quæſtor of *Sicily*, having found it out by ſome deſcription he had met with, diſcover'd it to the Senate of *Syracuſa*.

Cicero ſays, that *Syracuſa* was the greateſt, and moſt Beautiful of all the *Grecian* Cities, and that it was compoſed of four very great Cities: The firſt was called, The *Iſland*, in which was the Fountain *Arethuſa*, that abounded with Fiſh. The Second, *Acradina*, where the *Forum*, *Piazza*'s, and Senate-Houſe were. The Third, *Tyche*, where the Temple of *Fortune* was. And the Fourth, *Neaples*, which was the laſt built, and adorn'd with a Magnificent Theatre.

Sicily,

Sicily, as the ſame *Cicero* affirms, was the Principal, and firſt of all Foreign Nations that ſought the Friendſhip of the People of *Rome*, and was the firſt that was called a Province.

All *Campania*, upon the Victory that *Hannibal* obtained at *Cannæ*, ſurrendred to him, and his Army taking their Winter Quarters at *Capua*, was wholly enervated with Luxury and Plenty.

Three Years after the taking of *Syracuſa*, *Capua* ſurrendred to the *Romans*, and it was long deliberated by the Senate, whether it ſhould not be wholly razed to the Ground; though at laſt it was concluded to ſpare it from entire Deſtruction: But to prevent all future rebellious Attempts, they were deprived of their Fields, their Magiſtracy, Senate, Publick Council, and of every ſhadow of a Government; and it was ordered to be a Market, or Store Town for laying in Proviſion, the Retreat of the Orators, the Fair of the Peaſants, and the Granary of *Campania*.

Two Years after, *Aſdrubal* brought new Succours into *Italy*, but was overthrown, and ſlain at the River *Metanſus* by the Conſuls *Marcus Livius Solinator*, and *Caius Claudius Nero*.

In the mean while *Publius Cornelius Scipio* met with Succeſs in his *Spaniſh* Expedition, where his Father and Uncle loſt their Lives; and having recovered the whole Province, returned to *Rome*, and being made Conſul, deſired *Africa* for his Province, that he might transfer

transfer the War thither. But *Quintus Fabius Maximus* oppoſed him, and urged that it was more reaſonable firſt to beat *Hannibal* out of *Italy*, before they attempted *Africa*. But *Scipio* on the other hand urged, that when the *Carthaginians* perceived the War to be fixt in their own Country, they would be obliged to recal *Hannibal* out of *Italy*, in whom they put their chief Hope and Confidence.

After a long diſpute on the Matter, the Senate granted *Sicily* to *Scipio*, and gave him leave if he judged it convenient to proceed to *Africa*: Which in ſome time he puts in execution, and by the Event proved what he had alledged to the Senate, the certain conſequence of his Advice. For the *Carthaginians* finding themſelves worſted in ſeveral Battles, and that they ſuffered very much by the prevailing Arms of the *Romans*, recalled *Hannibal* out of *Italy*. So that great General was much againſt his will obliged to return home, and leave *Italy*, where he had for ſixteen years together carryed all before him, and had choſe out the place where he deſigned to Encamp under the Walls of *Rome*. Being come into *Africa*, he was at laſt overcome by *Scipio* in a very great Battle, who by the conſent of the Senate of *Rome* after this made Peace with the Enemy. By theſe *African* Exploits he obtained the Sirname of *Africanus*.

But here 'tis worthy our Obſervation to conſider out of what prodigious ſtraights the *Romans* brought themſelves; for now for ſeveral Years

Years their Fortune ſeemed to depend upon a very nice and ſlender turn; but they were fated to ſurmount all Difficulties, and Diſtreſſes, and to raiſe themſelves to be the Lords of the whole World. Which *Hannibal*, they ſay, foreſaw, when the News was brought him of the Overthrow of his Brother *Aſdrubal*. The words that he ſpoke on this Occaſion, *Horace* makes uſe of in that Ode where he celebrates the Praiſe of *Druſus*, and his Family. And I am of Opinion that this Ode deſerves to be got without Book by every Young Man, it contains ſo much Elegancy and Learning.

The *Romans* having made Peace with the *Carthaginians*, beſides thoſe Wars which they were engaged in in *Italy*, *Iſtria*, and *Luſitania*, had a very bloody War with *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had enſlav'd *Greece*. *Titus Quintus Faucinus* was the *Roman* General in this War, who having vanquiſh'd the Enemy, by the Order of the Senate reſtored *Greece* to its Liberty, and obliged *Philip* not to engage in any War without the Bounds of *Macedon*.

This War was followed by another againſt *Antiochus* King of *Syria*, who paſſing into *Europe*, was beaten by *Manius Glabrio*, and driven out of *Greece* by the *Romans* with the help of *Philip* King of *Macedon*.

Theſe Kings of *Syria*, *Aſia*, and *Macedon*, were the Poſterity of thoſe Commanders, who after the Death of *Alexander* the Great, parted the Provinces of the World among themſelves, as I have before related. For after the *Ro-*

mans

mans had made Peace with *Carthage*, and ſubdued all *Italy*, and reduced to their Power the greateſt part of the moſt adjacent parts of *Europe*, arrived to that degree of Power, that very remote Kings and Nations ſent to implore their Amity.

Thus the *Ægyptians* ſent an Ambaſſy to *Rome*, to deſire the Senate to take the Tutelage, and Care of their young Prince *Ptolomæus Epiphanes*, as yet but a Boy, and not capable of adminiſtring Publick Affairs, or of coping with *Antiochus* the Great, from whom the greateſt Danger threaten'd him.

Upon which the Senate ſent to *Antiochus*, to forbid him attempting any thing upon *Ægypt*. With which he being much offended, and puſh'd on by *Hannibal* (who had now retir'd to his Court) to engage in the War, paſſed into *Greece*, and was there put to flight, as I have already ſaid. The *Romans* getting a Fleet ready, purſue him into *Aſia*, and in a very great Battle Conquer him, and ſo drive him beyond the Mountain *Taurus*.

Cicero Reports, that *Antiochus*, after he had received theſe blows, uſed to ſay, that the *Romans* had done him a conſiderable Kindneſs, and in freeing him from too large a Care, had taught him to be content with more moderate Bounds of Empire. *Lucius Cornelius Scipio*, the Brother of *Africanus*, was General in this War, and from it was dignified with the Sirname of *Aſiaticus*.

After

After this, *Marcus Fulvius* conquered the *Ætolians*, and Triumphed for his Victory.

But after *Publius Scipio Africanus*, who was Lieutenant-General to his Brother, returned out of *Asia* home, the Tribunes of the People began to pick holes in his Coat, and would not let him alone; to avoid which, he retir'd to his Country Villa at *Linternum* in *Campania*, and there dyed, according to some Authors, in the fifty second Year of his Age; a Man inferiour to none: He was the Contemporary of *Marcus Portius Cato*.

Cicero, in his Dialogue of Old Age, introduces *Cato* speaking very Honourably, and much like a Friend of *Scipio*, and the inclinations of their Age; chiefly extolling the greatness of his Mind. But *Livy* represents *Cato* as an Enemy of *Scipio*'s, and one that did generally lessen, and enviously diminish the Reputation of his Courage. *Cicero* attributes to him a great readiness, and celerity in the dispatch of Affairs.

In this time flourished the Poets *Ennius*, *Plautus*, and *Nævius*.

After *Antiochus* was thus worsted, *Hannibal* fled to *Prusias* to the King of *Bithynia*: And when the *Romans* demanded him to be delivered to them, to avoid falling into their Hands, he poisoned himself.

Antiochus Epiphanes succeeded his Father *Antiochus* in his Throne, and Designs upon *Ægypt*, endeavouring to make himself Master of it by Treachery, though he was Uncle to

Philo-

Philometer King of *Ægypt*, who had now ſucceeded his Father; uſing his Relation, as a means of accompliſhing his Ends, he profeſſed himſelf his Guardian, and reſolved to make away him, and divert the whole Power, and Adminiſtration of Affairs to himſelf. But the *Romans* being again ſollicited by the *Ægyptians*, who had found out his Treachery, ſent *Caius Popilius Lænates* Ambaſſador to him.

He when he came into the Preſence of *Antiochus*, ſummoned him in the Name of the People of *Rome* to raiſe the Siege of *Alexandria*, and march away: But *Antiochus* deſiring time to conſider of it, *Popilius* with the Stick he had in his hand made a Circle about him, and aloud commanded him not to ſtir out of that Circle till he had returned his Anſwer, who being terrified with the Power of the *Romans*, of which he was not ignorant, promiſed Peace.

I touch upon theſe Tranſactions to ſhew how the *Romans* from ſmall beginnings have by degrees increaſed, and what Progreſs they made, till they arrived to the height of Empire. For now their Courage could be no longer confined within the Bounds of *Italy*, but paſſing them, penetrated into the ſeveral Parts of the World. But there remained a great deal yet behind for them to perform before they could reach that vaſt Power, and Command, which took in the chiefeſt part of the known World, as I ſhall in few words make evident.

Philip

Philip King of *Macedon*, of whom I ſpoke but now, very highly reſenting the hard Meaſure he had received from the *Romans*, in having his Power reduced into too ſtrait a compaſs, thought of renewing the War. But he being prevented from putting his Determinations into execution by Death, left his Throne to his Son *Perſeus*, who, being long before diſguſted at the *Romans*, inherited his Reſolutions of War as well as his Crown. But *Lucius Æmylius Paulus* in his ſecond Conſul-ſhip overcame him, and in the Battle took both him, and his Wife, Mother, and Children Priſoners, and carryed them in Triumph, gaining by that the Sirname of *Macedonicus*; and from this time *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Ennius, according to *Cicero*, dyed juſt the Year before, when he was Seventy Years of Age. *Publius Cornelius Naſica* ſome few Years after Conquers *Dalmatia*: After which in a few Years the third *Punick* War broke out.

For the *Carthaginians*, impatient of Peace and Idleneſs, turn their Arms chiefly on *Maſſaniſſa* King of *Numidia*, a Friend and Confederate of the *Romans*, and invaded his Country; the Senate upon his Sollicitations Decree a War in his Defence, about the Six Hundred and Fourth Year after the Foundation of *Rome*. But they differed in their Opinions whether they ſhould ſpare the City, or totally level it to the Ground. They that were for ſparing it urged, that if *Carthage* were deſtroyed,

ſtroyed, the *Romans* would fall out among themſelves in Civil Wars. But *Marcus Porcius Cato* on the other hand laid before them the great danger the Common-Wealth of *Rome* would be continually in if this City were not entirely deſtroyed. Which Opinion at laſt prevailed, though he dyed in the midſt of the Diſpute, in the Eighty fifth year of his Age. *Cicero* places him among the Ancient Orators, in the next degree to *Marcus Cornelius Cethegus*, who was celebrated by *Ennius*, as he ſays; and that there were One Hundred and Fifty of his Orations extant in his time, full of great Thoughts and Words; he condemns his Contemporary of a Criminal Niceneſs, in not peruſing them, and compares him to *Lycias*, an *Athenian* Author.

Publius Scipio Æmylianus, the Son of *Paulus Macedonicus*, and adopted Grandſon of *Scipio Africanus*, was made General in this third *Punick* War. He proſecuting the War that was begun by others, in the fourth Year takes *Carthage*, after a hot Siege of ſome days continuance, Plunders, Burns, and Levels it to the Ground, gaining the Name of *Africanus* too, as well as he who before had beat *Hannibal*.

And this was the end of this Powerful City, of greater Antiquity than *Rome* it ſelf, and not much inferiour to it in Noble Commanders, and had been many Years Miſtreſs of a large Dominion.

Cicero ſays, that *Publius Scipio*, after the taking of *Carthage*, reſtored to the *Sicilians* thoſe Statues

Stutues and Ornaments, which they had taken from them ſome Years before. Amongſt the reſt he reſtored to thoſe of *Agrigentin* that Bull, which was reported to be that of *Phaleris* the Tyrant, in which he uſed to put thoſe he deſtined to Death, and then cauſed a Fire to be kindled under it.

This *Phaleris* was not ſlain by Treachery, or any private Conſpiracy, as many other Tyrants were, but by the Publick Outrage of the whole Body of the *Agrigentines* in an open Mutiny.

Cicero calls *Africa* the Cittadel, or Caſtle of all the Provinces.

Much about this time the *Romans* declared War againſt the *Achæans*, a People of *Greece*, for their violating the Rights of their Ambaſſadors. *Lucius Mummius* the Conſul was made Generaliſſimo of the Forces the *Romans* employed in this War; who having in the Battle gained the Victory, all *Achaia* ſurrendred to him, and he by the Order of a Decree of the Senate burnt and deſtroyed *Corinth*, the chiefeſt, and moſt wealthy City of all *Greece*, which *Cicero* calls the Light or Beauty of *Greece*, leſt recovering it ſelf from the preſſures it then lay under, it ſhould in time increaſe its Strength, and eſtabliſh its Power. This Conqueſt gained *Mummius* the Sirname of *Achaicus*.

At this time it was that *Variatus* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Luſitania*. A Man that from a Shepherd became a Hunter, from that a Robber, and in a little time Commander of a

brave Army. He held out the War againſt the *Romans* ſeveral Years, and fought them ſeveral times with Succeſs, and was at laſt kill'd by Treachery; and not before his Death did *Decius Junius Brutus*, then Conſul, ſubdue all *Luſitania*, even to the Sea Coaſts.

The *Romans* at this time received a great blow from thoſe of *Numantia*, a People of *Spain*. The Senate made an extraordinary Election of *Publius Scipio Africanus* to the Conſulſhip, and gave him the Charge of this War againſt the *Numantines*, who had rejected the Peace that was made by the Conſul *Mancinus*, becauſe it was not for their Honour.

Who marching thither with his Army, reduced the Souldiers to a more ſevere Diſcipline; for they had by a remiſneſs of Commanders been permitted to grow more looſe and effeminate, and leſs able to undergo the Fatigues of War. After he had beſieged the City of *Numantia* ſome time, he took it, and razed it to the Ground Fourteen Years after the Deſtruction of *Carthage*, and the Six Hundredth of the Foundation of *Rome*.

Cicero calls *Carthage* and *Numantia* the two Terrors of the *Roman* Empire. About the ſame time began the Tumult of the Slaves, who had got to ſuch a Powerful Head in *Sicily*, that the Conſul *Caius Fulvius* found it no eaſie matter to reduce them.

The next War the *Romans* had was in *Aſia*, againſt *Ariſtonicus*, upon this occaſion: *Attalus* King of *Pergamus* had by his Will made the

Roman

Roman People his Heir; but *Ariſtonicus* his Relation taking Poſſeſſion of that part of *Aſia*, deprived the *Romans* of their Legacy: But he was conquer'd, and at laſt taken Priſoner by *Marcus Perpenna*, then Conſul.

The Year following, which was IↃCXXV Year of the Foundation of *Rome*, *Publius Scipio Africanus* was ſtifled, as 'twas thought, by his Relations in his Bed in the Night-time.

Cicero gives him the Character of Eloquent, and of the higheſt Integrity and Honour in the World: And affirms, that though the whole City was extreamly affected with his Death, yet there was no care taken to diſcover the Authors of it, but that there appeared two Suns that Year. And thus this extraordinary Man dyed in the fifty ſixth Year of his Age; which *Cicero* in a moſt ingenious Fiction pretends was foretold him by *Africanus* the elder.

In this Age lived *Lucilius*, *Terence*, *Pacuvius*, *Accius*, *Licinius*, *Cæcilius*, *Afranius*. *Caius Lælius*, the intimate Friend of *Africanus*, calls *Pacuvius* his chief Friend, and *Terence* his Acquaintance.

After this, *Fabius Maximus* being Conſul, in a famous Battel overcame the *Allobroges*, *Averni*, and *Ruteni*, Nations of *Gallia*, now *France*.

At the ſame time was *Caius Gracchus*, the Tribune of the People, killed in *Rome*; a Man of great Eloquence, and a great ſtickler for the *Agrarian* Law, whoſe Brother, *Tiberius Gracchus*, was killed for the like Cauſe twelve Years before.

Cicero ſays, they were both Eloquent, and though the Orations of *Tiberius* were not ſo fine for Language, yet that they were ſharp, and full of Knowledge. But he ſays, thoſe of his Brother *Caius* ought to be judged by Youth before any, becauſe they are fit not only to ſharpen the Wit, but alſo to nouriſh and cheriſh it. He calls him the moſt Ingenious and Eloquent of the *Romans.*

Caius Gracchus dreamt, that he ſaw his Brother *Tiberius*, who informed him that he ſhould come to the ſame Death that he did; which he told to ſeveral of his Acquaintance before he was made Tribune of the People, as *Cicero* reports.

The Laws that were enacted by them are ſtill extant, as that for ſettling Colonies, Priviledges of Souldiers, Government of Provinces, the Suffrages of the People, and diſpoſing of the *Attalick* and *Aſiatick* Laws.

After theſe Tumults of the Tribunes of the People followed the Wars with *Jugurtha* King of *Numidia*, which was begun under the Conduct of *Lucius Calpurnius Beſtia* the Conſul, and carryed on by *Quintus Cæcilius Metellus*, and finiſhed by *Caius Marius* (who had formerly ſerved as a Souldier under *Publius Scipio*) in their ſeveral Conſul-ſhips. For when *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, who was the Ally of *Jugurtha*, had experienced the Proweſs of the *Roman* Arms in an Overthrow he received from them, unwilling to run the riſque of the War any longer, delivered *Jugurtha* bound to *Sylla*,

Sylla, who was ſent for that end to him by the Conſul *Marius*.

In this Year, that was the Six Hundred and Forty Seventh of the Foundation of *Rome*, *Marcus Tullius Cicero* was born, and Eight years before him *Quintus Hortenſius*, a Famous Orator.

In the time of the Wars of *Jugurtha*, vaſt numbers of the *Cimbri* and *Theutoni* made irruption, ſome into *Italy*, and ſome into *Gallia*; and after they had done the *Romans* a great deal of Damage in ſeveral great Overthrows, were all entirely cut off by *Caius Marius* in his fourth Conſul-ſhip; the *Theutoni* at the *Sextian Waters*, a Town of the Province of *Gallia*, and the *Cimbri* on the Confines of *Inſubria*.

This Succeſs was followed cloſe with new Diſturbances, for many of the People of *Italy* rebelled againſt the *Romans*; that is, the *Samnites*, *Peligni*, *Marſi*, *Veſtini*, *Marucini*, *Umbrians*, *Picentes*, and the *Lucani*.

Various was the Succeſs of this War, and they were with no ſmall difficulty at laſt reduced.

Soon after another great and dangerous Misfortune befel the Common-Wealth, or at leaſt threatened it; for *Mithridates* King of *Pontus* had driven *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, and *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia*, Friends and Allies of the City of *Rome*, out of their Kingdoms; and having made himſelf Maſter of *Phrygia*, a *Roman* Province, he paſſed on into *Aſia*.

Upon which the Senate Decree War againſt him. But there aroſe a Faction about the Commander of this War; for ſome were for *Sylla*, who was of Noble Birth, and others for *Caius Marius*, among whom was *Publius Sulpitius*, Tribune of the People.

But *Sylla* having an Army to back him, drove *Marius* out of *Rome*, who, after he had hid himſelf in the Marſhes of *Minturnas*, ventured in a ſmall Boat, with no little hazard, to paſs into Exile in *Africa*.

Cornelius Cinna being Conſul, whilſt *Sylla* was abſent in the *Aſiatick* War began new Diſorders; but being caſt out of the City by his Colleague *Cneius Octavius*, he drew what Forces he was able together, and joyns himſelf with *Caius Marius*, who left *Africa* to lay hold of this Opportunity to play his Game afreſh.

To this purpoſe having got their Forces into a Body, they both ſit down before *Rome*, on the ſide of *Janiculum*: And being let in by the Remiſneſs and Treachery of the Inhabitants, whoſe Diviſions rendred them uncapable of holding out any longer, they ſpread Confuſion, Slaughter, and Rapine in every part of the City: When they had done this, they declare themſelves Conſuls, and back'd by that Authority, they committed a great many Cruelties; *Cinna* commanding *Marcus Antonius*, an excellent Orator, to be put to Death; and *Marius* inflicted the ſame Puniſhment on *Quintus Catulus*.

Sylla having Notice given him of theſe Tranſactions at *Rome*, having now recovered moſt of thoſe places *Mithridates* had poſſeſſed himſelf of, made Peace with him, and returned into *Italy*. But *Marius* dyed before he came, when he had been ſeven times Conſul.

But *Cinna* having made *Cn. Papyrius Carbo* his Colleague, endeavoured, with the Son of *Marius*, to oppoſe the Power and Arms of *Sylla*, but to no purpoſe, for they were overcome by him: And *Sylla* by that means having now all the Power in his hands, proſecuted all that had ſided againſt him with the greateſt Severity. He proclaimed a Proſcription, and diſpoſed of the Goods of the Proſcribed, and deprived their Children of their Liberty, making them incapable of obtaining any Command in the Common-Wealth. But after this, being made Dictator, he diſpoſed of all Affairs with an Abſolute and Arbitrary Power, his Will being the Law of all things; he leſſened the Power of the Tribunes, and in a Speech he openly ſaid, that he Sold his Prey, when he diſpoſed of the Goods of the Citizens of *Rome*. In ſhort, all depended ſo entirely on his Command, that there was no one held his Goods, Country, or Life, on any ſurer Tenure than his Pleaſure.

He was ſo inveterate againſt *Marius*, that he commanded his dead Body, which was buried near the River *Anio*, to be torn in pieces, and to be ſcattered about. But he himſelf was the firſt of the *Cornelian* Family of the Patri-

cian degree, that ordered his Corps to be burned after he was dead, fearing perhaps he might meet with the ſame meaſure, which he had given to that of *Marius*.

Cicero gives this Character of *Marius*, that he was a Man of Courage and Honour; that he was not eaſily appeaſed when Angry: He calls him the Terror of the Enemy, and the Hope and Safety of his Country. He calls *Sylla* violent, and *Cinna* cruel.

Sylla made four new Laws, of Falſity, of Parricid, of the *Sicarii*, and of Injuries.

When he was Dictator, *Cicero* being four and twenty years old, pleaded his firſt publick Cauſe for *Sextus Roſcius Amerinus*.

The greateſt Orators before him were *Quintus Catulus*, *Caius Julius*, *Marcus Antonius*, and *Lucius Craſſus*; in whoſe time, as *Cicero* obſerves, the *Roman* Language was in its perfection.

But this Age wherein *Cicero* lived was the moſt Learned of any of the *Roman* Empire: For to ſay nothing of ſo many Eminent Orators, there were a great many able Lawers, in which number I reckon *Caius Aquilius Gallus*, *Lucius Lucilius Balbus*, *Caius Juventius*, *Sextus Papyrius*, the Scholars of *Quintus Mutius Scævola* the Chief Prieſt, from whom *Cicero* had ſome Inſtructions in his Youth.

Publius Servius Sulpitius was Contemporary with *Cicero*, and was the Scholar of thoſe I have named, and Maſter to *Aulus Oſſilius*, *Publius Alphenus Varus*, *Caius Titus*, *Cæſius*, the two *Auſidii*,

Aufidii, Caius Atteius Pacuvius, Flavius Priſcus, Cinna, and *Publius Cæcilius.*

At the ſame time with *Sulpitius,* flouriſhed *Caius Trebatius,* whoſe Scholar was *Antiſtius Labeo.*

Cicero ſpeaking in the Praiſe of *Sulpitius* after his Death, ſays, That if all the Lawyers that have ever been known for their Skill in the Laws in the City of *Rome,* club'd their Knowledge together, they could not make one of equal ability to *Sulpitius:* For he was no leſs a Student of Juſtice and Equity, than of the Law.

Of all that number that were proſcribed, there none remained but *Quintus Sertorius,* a Man of great Courage and Skill in the Art of War. He retiring into the fartheſt part of *Spain,* procured to himſelf ſuch a Power, that he maintained a Bloody War with the *Romans,* and having beaten ſeveral Commanders for the Common-Wealth, reduced a great many Towns into his poſſeſſion.

But at laſt the Care and Command of this War was given to *Pompey,* and after it had continued Ten Years with various Succeſſes, *Sertorius* was ſlain by Treachery, which brought all *Spain* into the hands of *Pompey.*

At this time *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* dying, left the *Roman* People his Heirs. But *Mithridates,* who had before made a League with *Sertorius,* in the midſt of the Factions of *Marius* and *Sylla,* having poſſeſſed himſelf of *Bithynia,* renewed the War with a great deal of Power and Reſolution.

Lucius

Lucius Lucullus was ſent with an Army againſt him, who in his Conſul-ſhip having had the better of him in ſeveral Engagements of Horſe, when he was Proconſul, drove him into *Pontus*, having routed his Army, and diſpoſſeſſed him of *Bithynia*. Where being again in a very furious Battle overcome, *Mithridates* fled to *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. *Lucullus* purſuing him, in ſeveral Fights worſted both their Forces. But that which hindred him from putting an abſolute end to the War, and rob'd him of that Fruit and Glory of an entire Conqueſt, was the Tumults of the Souldiers, which ſome of his Enemies cunningly ſtirred up and fomented.

For a little after *Lucullus* was recalled, and *Cneius Pompeius* ſent in his place. *Cicero* in an Oration which he made to the People in the Praiſe of *Pompey*, was one that perſwaded this alteration.

This did not hinder *Lucullus* from Triumphing upon his return, and preſenting the *Romans* with a Splendid Entertainment. After which quitting Publick Affairs, he retired to his own Houſe, and led a private Life, in the ſtudy of Philoſophy, and collected a very large and Noble Library. In this his Retirement he kept up the Grandeur and Magnificence, his Equipage and Houſe as high as ever. *Cicero* mentions his Library, and ſays, he uſed to frequent it.

Pompey drove *Mithridates* to that Extremity, as to ſeek his Safety by Flight, and purſued him

him a great way. *Cicero* ſays, that when *Tigranes* had ſurrendred himſelf into his hands, and was beheld in a ſuppliant and mournful poſture by him, he raiſed him up, and put his Crown on his Head again, which he had thrown aſide, and placed him again on his Throne, though under ſome certain Conditions, which he was to obſerve.

Mithridates being at laſt beſieged by his own Son *Pharmaces*, killed himſelf.

Pompey had gained a great deal of Authority by the War againſt the Pirates, which he finiſhed before his Expedition againſt *Mithridates*.

This War being ended, there broke out another Civil Diſcord. For *Lucius Catiline* with many others had entred into a Conſpiracy for the ſubverſion of the Government; who being by the extraordinary Care and Diligence of *Cicero*, then Conſul, diſcovered, and driven out of the City, was overcome and ſlain by *Caius Antonius*, *Cicero*'s Colleague, after he had muſtered together in *Hetruria* a number of Deſperado's, to try what he could do by open Force, his private endeavours being diſappointed.

Cicero was not a little fond of this Service he did the Common-Wealth, for he mentions it often in his Works, with a Face of Oſtentation; reckoning up not only thoſe Prodigies which were ſeen in the Night at that time, as unuſual Flames and Burnings in the Sky, Thunder-bolts that fell, and Earthquakes; but looks in

in thoſe other Prodigies, which happened two years before he was Conſul, in the Conſulſhip of *Lucius Cotta*, and *Torquatus*, which were theſe: That moſt of the Towers of the Capitol were Thunder-ſtrook, and the Images of the Gods, and the Statues of the Ancients thrown down, and the Braſs in which the Laws were inſcribed melted; and even the Statue of *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*, when he was little, and ſucking the Teats of a She-Wolf: All which he applies to the delivery he had brought the City from *Catiline*'s Conſpiracy.

If we may credit the Character that *Cicero* gives of *Catiline*'s Nature and Genius, we ſhall agree with him, that there never was ſuch a Monſter in the World beſides, compoſed of ſuch contrary, nay, oppoſite inclinations and deſires.

In the Conſulſhip of *Cicero*, *C. Octavius* was born, and *Judea*, after *Pompey* had taken *Hieruſalem*, was made Tributary to the *Roman* Common-Wealth.

Five Years after this, in the Conſulſhip of *Lucius Piſo*, and *Aulus Gabinius*, the *Helvetians*, diſſatisfied with the Barrenneſs of their Country, were entred the *Roman* Province in *Gallia*, with a very numerous Army, deſigning to paſs through that into the Body of *Gallia*, whither they reſolved to tranſplant themſelves, invited by the Fertility of the Country.

But

But as ſoon as C. *Julius Cæſar* had received information of their Motions, this Province being allotted him by the Senate, having drawn his Forces together, he marched againſt them, and coming to a Battle, worſted them. After which, marching from *Veſontio*, a Town of the *Sequani*, he vanquiſhed not far from the *Rhine*, *Arioviſtus*, a King of the *Germans*, who had made an inroad into *Gallia Celtica*, and ſubdued the *Hedui*, who were a People Friends and Confederates of the *Romans*. Purſuing his Conqueſt, he brought all *Gallia* into the *Roman* Subjection; and paſſing the Sea into *Britany*, made a Conqueſt of part of that Iſland.

Cicero ſays, *Cæſar* ſent him Letters from *Britany*, dated the firſt of *September*, which he received the fourth of *October* following. When *Cæſar* went upon his *Gallick* Expedition, *Cicero* being perſecuted by *Publius Clodius*, Tribune of the People, went into Baniſhment, having firſt made an Oration to the Knights and People, commending to their Care and Protection his Children and Family.

But being after a few Months Exile recalled by the Senate, and received by the Acclamations and Welcomes of the People, he made an Oration to the *Romans*, in which he returned his Thanks to thoſe that had been his Friends.

He afterwards laid the cauſe of his Baniſhment on the Conſuls *Lucius Piſo*, and *Aulus Gabinius*, making it appear that he was betrayed by them; this he makes out in the Orations

Orations againſt them both; in one of which he perſwades the Senate to deprive them of their Provinces of *Syria* and *Macedonia*, and not to recal *Cæſar* from *Gallia* in the midſt of his Succeſs, but that they ſhould lengthen his Command, till he had entirely put an end to the War.

In the mean time *Ptolomæus Auletes* King of *Ægypt*, being driven out of his Kingdom by the Rebellion of his People, on pretence of his Cruelty and Supinity, came to *Rome*, and was, by the Mediation of *Pompey* to the Senate, reſtored to his Throne by *Aulus Gabinius*, who employed in that Affair by the Senate, diſpoſſeſſed *Archelaus*, that was ſet up by the People.

Gabinius was at laſt Fined to the Publick Exchequer Ten Thouſand Talents; or, as ſome of our Modern compute it, Sixty Hundred Thouſand Crowns of Gold; becauſe he had received as great a Sum from *Ptolomy*.

Marcus Craſſus, to whom the Senate had decreed the *Parthian* War, having the *Euphrates*, was perfidiouſly ſlain by them, being drawn to a Parley, and there overpower'd, not expecting any ſuch matter.

This is the *Craſſus*, who uſed to ſay, that no Man deſerved to be called Rich, but he who could keep an Army out of his own private Eſtate.

About this time alſo *Titus Annius Milo* ſlew *P. Clodius*. *Cicero* undertakes the Defence of *Milo*, in the third Conſulſhip of *Pompey*, who

was

was nevertheleſs obliged, for all he could ſay, to go into Exile.

The *Gallick* War being ended in the eighth year after it began, the Civil War broke out betwixt *Caius Julius Cæſar*, and his Son-in-Law *Pompey*. The cauſe of which was, that *Cæſar* was denyed the Conſulſhip, unleſs he firſt diſmiſſed his Army, and delivered up his Province: But he was perſwaded that he could be in no Safety if he left his Army; yet he offered this Condition of Accommodation, to quit it, if *Pompey* were obliged to do the ſame; but this offer being refuſed, he with an incredible diſpatch marched from *France* to *Italy*, and having entred *Romagna*, he took ſeveral Towns, ſome by Surrender, and others freely received him.

As ſoon as this News arrived at *Rome*, *Pompey* and the two Conſuls, *Caius Marcellus*, and *Lucius Lentulus* fled from thence to *Brunduſium*, a Sea-Port Town of *Apulia*. Thither *Cæſar* follows them, but the Conſuls had already paſt the Sea to *Dyrrhachium*, and *Pompey* ſoon after had followed them. But when *Cæſar* found for want of Ships that he could not purſue them as yet any further, he returned to *Rome*, and there having ſummoned the Senate, he complains of the Injuries he had received, and at the ſame time propoſes Conditions of Peace. But finding the Senate not very forward in the Negotiation, he goes away for *Marſeilles*, where he found the Gates ſhut againſt him; but getting a Fleet together, he beſieges it cloſe by

by Sea and Land: But leaving the continuance of that to his Lieutenants, he marches for *Spain*, where in a little time he has all the *Pompeian* Army, with its Leaders *Petreius* and *Afranius* ſurrendred into his hands.

From his *Spaniſh* Expedition, he returns to the Siege of *Marſeilles*, who now deſpairing of Relief, ſurrendred the place into his hands; where hearing the News, that he was in his abſence by *Marcus Lepidus* made Dictator, he returns to *Rome*, where he is made Conſul with *Publius Servilius Iſauricus*. And having ſettled the Affairs of the City, he tranſported his Army into *Greece*, and there in *Theſſaly* coming to a Battle with *Pompey*, after a Bloody Fight, wins the Day, and though much inferiour in Number, takes the Camp of the Enemy.

Pompey from this Fight fled into *Ægypt*, where then Reigned *Ptolomæus Dionyſius*, the Son of *Ptolomæus Auletes*, whom *Pompey* by his Intereſt had reſtored to his Throne, as I have already declared. For which Benefit he hoped in a grateful Return, he ſhould find Shelter and Aſſiſtance in that Kingdom. But the King being but a Boy, and his Courtiers either fearing a Mutiny, or elſe deſpiſing his Fortune in that Diſtreſs, by Treachery Murder him. *Cæſar* purſuing his flying Enemy, arrives at *Alexandria* with Three Thouſand Two Hundred Men, and there he firſt heard of the Death of *Pompey*.

In

In this very Juncture the King of *Ægypt* was at War with his Sister *Cleopatra*. But *Cæsar* being Consul, and now at *Alexandria*, would rather have had their Controversie ended by their Right before him, than that they should have recourse to Arms, since some few Years before the Senate had by a Law admitted *Ptolomy*, the Father of the present King, into the number of their Allies. But the Officers of the Court resented this extreamly, complaing that the Majesty of their King suffered not a little diminution, when he was summoned to plead his Cause before another, as a Superiour Power. Wherefore they proceeded to Arms against *Cæsar* with all the Malice of an enraged Revenge, but with a great deal of difficulty and danger he at last subdued them, and the King being slain, he reduced not *Ægypt* into the form of a Province, but gave the Government to *Cleopatra* and her younger Brother.

From thence *Cæsar* passing into *Syria* and *Pontus*, overcame *Pharnaces* the Son of *Mithridates*, and suppreſt all Disturbance in *Cappadocia*, *Armenia*, *Gallo-græcia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*.

After which returning once more to *Italy*, and *Rome*, after the middle of Winter, about the Winter Equinox, he passes from *Lilybæus* into *Africa*, though he was advised by a great Southsayer not to venture over the Sea till after the Winter Season were over.

For thither had fled from the *Pharſalian* Battle, *Scipio*, and *Cato*, the great Grandſon of *Marcus Porcius Cato*, and having got together a very great Army, had engaged *Juba* King of *Mauritania* to eſpouſe their Quarrel: But were at laſt, after the arrival of *Cæſar*, almoſt every Man deſtroyed.

But *Cato*, to avoid falling into his hands, killed himſelf at *Utica*, which *Cicero* defends, and ſays, it was better for him, to whom Nature had given ſuch an incredible * Moroſeneſs, or Obſtinacy, than behold the Face of the Victorious Tyrant.

* *Gravitatem.*

Cato was of the Stoical Opinion, and ſometimes advanced ſome very harſh Sayings in the Senate, as if he had been in the Government of *Plato*, and not in the *Roman* Dregs, as *Cicero* Phraſes it.

After all this, *Cæſar* again came to *Rome*, and when he had Triumphed for *Gallia*, *Ægypt*, *Pontus*, and *Africa*, he went into *Spain* againſt *Sextus Pompeius*, and at laſt ſubdued him.

But having now vanquiſhed all his Oppoſers, and on every ſide ſpread an Univerſal Tranquility and Peace, in the fifth Year after the beginning of the Civil War, he returned to *Rome*: And when he had Triumphed for his *Spaniſh* Conqueſts, he incurred the Envy and Hatred of many by accepting of the perpetual Dictatorſhip, which was offered him; and modelling the Senate with an Abſolute Power,

Power, according to his own Will, ingroſſing to himſelf almoſt the ſole diſpoſal of all other Dignities to whom he thought fit. And having thus changed the Government of the Common-Wealth, fixing the Supream Power in one Man, the Conſpiracy againſt him took effect on the Fifteenth of *March*, five Months after his Return, in the Senate-Houſe of *Pompey*, where he was killed by thoſe very Men, whom he had by frequent and freſh Obligations bound to be his Friends, to whom he had even given their Lives and Eſtates, in receiving them into Favour after they had eſpouſed the Cauſe of *Pompey*, and fought againſt him. Of which number were *Marcus* and *Decius Brutus*, *Caius Caſſius*, *Cneius Domitius*, *R. Trebonius*, *Q. Tullius Cimber*, the two *Servilii*, *Caſca*, *Hala*, and ſeveral more.

Mark Antony the Conſul, and *Cæſar*'s Colleague, accuſed *Cicero* to the Senate, as guilty of the Conſpiracy, becauſe he had aloud congratulated *Marcus Brutus* by Name, for the recovery of their Liberty, when he as ſoon as *Cæſar* was ſlain held up his Bloody Dagger on high.

Some ſay, that *Cæſar* ſeeing *Brutus* come towards him, ſpoke to him in *Greek*, and called him Son, but by what Authority I know not. 'Tis true, that 'tis evident from *Cicero*, that *Brutus* was Fifteen Years younger than *Cæſar*.

There were ſeveral Laws made in his Conſulſhip and Dictatorſhip, and from his Name

called *Julia*; as the *Agrarian*, of *Judgments*, of *Force*, of *Majesty*, of *Bribery*, of the *Priesthood*, of *Usury*.

Every Body allows *Cæsar Clemency*; *Cicero* gives him besides that, Wit, Ingenuity, Judgment, Reason, Memory, Learning, Knowledge, Industry; though he bore his Government with a great deal of uneasiness, but that he kept private; and in a Letter to his Intimate Friend *Atticus* he says of it, *This Royalty will not be of above half a Year's continuance.*

'Tis evident that *Cicero* discovered a great deal of inconstancy and wavering all along in the Controversie betwixt *Cæsar* and *Pompey*. For first, siding with the latter, and following even his Camp, although he blamed his Despair and Negligence, in his Epistles to his Friends, called *Cæsar*, that had opposed his Party with Arms, a Tyrant and Monster: Yet when *Pompey* was beaten, and slain, and he saw *Cæsar* Pardon a great many that had been in Arms against him, he turned his Style, and in three Orations extolled him to the Sky. And when *Cæsar*, upon his being informed of Plots that were against him, had said sometimes, that he had lived long enough, he earnestly prest him to cast off that Opinion, for though he had obtained Honour and Glory enough, and so might have lived long enough for his own particular Happiness, yet he had not lived long enough for the Common-wealth, who could not subsist without his Protection and Government. That he had no reason to

stand

ſtand in fear of any Danger; *For all of us promiſe you not only Sentinels and Guards, but alſo our own Boſoms and Bodies to oppoſe all Attempts againſt you.*

And after all this he ſeemed not a little pleaſed with his Death, when he ſaid, that his Murderers had obtained ſo much Glory by the Fact, that it ſeemed to be more than Mortal, and almoſt to exceed the capacity of Heaven to contain.

This therefore was the Fourth and laſt *Monarchy.* And here we muſt obſerve, how this City from very ſmall Beginnings increaſed, and roſe to the Supream Authority, and higheſt Power, which, though built by Shepherds, became at laſt the Miſtreſs of the whole known World.

And now I ſhall with all the brevity the Subject will allow, proceed to diſcover how by degrees it declined from this height of Power to its entire Deſtruction.

The End of the Firſt Book.

Jo. Sleidan's HISTORY Of the Four Monarchies.

BOOK II.

AFter the Death of *Cæsar*, *Caius Octavius* his Sister's Grandson having gained the *Roman* Legions to his Interest, prosecuted the Assassins with a great deal of Severity: And though he pretended at first to take Arms in Defence of the Common-wealth against *Mark Antony*, yet as soon as his Affairs were ripe for Execution, dividing the Empire betwixt himself, *Mark Antony*, and *Lepidus*, he

he eſtabliſhed the *Triumvirate*, the conſequence of which was the Death of *Cicero* in the Sixty ſixth Year of his Age, and the 711*th*. of the Building of *Rome*, who was ſacrificed to the Indignation of *Anthony*, againſt whom he had made ſeveral Orations; and Eight Years before him dyed *Quintus Hortenſius*, who, as I have before obſerved, was juſt ſo many Years older.

Cicero was certainly out in his Politicks, when upon *Mark Antony*'s diſturbing the Common-Wealth from the Death of *Cæſar*, he recommended to the Senate with an extraordinary *Encomium Caius Octavius*, a Relation of *Cæſar*'s, and a Youth of but Twenty Years of Age; perſwading them, not regarding the unripeneſs of his Age, to make him Conſul: And the eaſier to prevail with them, he produced ſeveral Examples of Antiquity to confirm it no Novelty; and with no ſmall pains removed thoſe Fears, which might any way influence them to the contrary, aſſuring the Senate he durſt engage his Credit with them, that he ſhould never degenerate from what he was at preſent, or ever fall ſhort of their beſt wiſhes and deſires. But ſoon after diſcovered his Error, when betray'd by him, he fell into the Power of *Mark Antony*. *Marcus Brutus* indeed very much condemned him for his Flattery of him.

But Differences ariſing from Jealouſies, which ſeldom fail where there are Partners in Empire, after the *Triumvirate* was broke, on

pretence of ſome Plots againſt *Octavius*, and *Marcus Lepidus* baniſhed. *Octavius* made War againſt his Colleague *Mark Antony*, and after the *Actian* Victory taking *Alexandria*, obliged him and *Cleopatra* (of whom I ſpoke before) to kill themſelves, and reduced the Kingdom of *Ægypt* to a *Roman* Province.

Hiſtory aſſures us, that the Revenue of *Ægypt*, in the Reign of *Ptolomæus Auletes*, was Twelve Thouſand and Fifty Talents; which, if you reckon *Ægyptian* Talents, amounts to Three Millions, Twelve Thouſand, Five Hundred Pounds of our Money: But if *Alexandrian*, which is more likely, *Alexandria* being the Seat of that Monarch, it comes to Four Millions, Five Hundred, and Eighteen Thouſand, Seven Hundred and Fifty Pounds *Sterling*; each *Ægyptian* Talent being Two Hundred and Fifty Pounds, and each *Alexandrian* Three Hundred and Seventy Five. But 'tis believed that after it fell into the *Romans* hands it was much increaſed by the additional Commerce of the *Indies* and *Æthiopia*.

Antony being thus overcome, *Octavius* reign'd alone Forty four Years, and in the Twenty Ninth of his Reign, and the Three Thouſand Nine Hundred and Fourth Year of the Creation of the World, according to the Computation of moſt, was born *Our Bleſſed Lord and Saviour Jeſus Chriſt*, ſeven Years after *Herod*, ſirnamed the Great, had rebuilt with a great deal of Magnificence the Temple of *Hieruſalem*, which had been deſtroyed.

Mark

Mark Antony was married to the Sister of *Octavius*, but in his *Asiatick* Expedition falling in Love with *Cleopatra*, deserted her, and gave himself entirely up to the Embraces of the *Ægyptian* Queen, which was one cause of this War. Authors have delivered such Account of the Luxury of these two Lovers, that it almost seems incredible; all which as well as their Lives ended in that Catastrophe I have mentioned. This *Antony* was the Grandson of that Famous Orator *Marcus Antonius*, of whom I spoke in the former Book.

In the Reign of *Octavius* the *Romans* first made War upon the *Germans* in their own Country. 'Tis true, *C. Julius Cæsar* twice worsted them, but it was in *Gallia*, first routing *Arioviſtus* in the Country of the *Celtæ*, and next at the Confluence of the *Maese* and the *Rhine*. After which Victory he built a Bridge, and passed the *Rhine*, but after a small stay there, he returned into *Gallia*, and broke the Bridge.

Two Years after making a new Bridge over the *Rhine* a little higher than the former, he march'd his Army over, with a Resolution of Invading the *Suevians*; but being soon informed by his Scouts and Spies, of all things, and being deter'd by the difficulty of the Attempt, and the fear he should want Provisions, and a safe Retreat, he repassed the River, and breaking down half the Bridge, left the other half standing, and fortified it with a Castle, and furnished that with a Garrison, that the Enemy

Enemy might not wholly loſe their apprehenſions of his Return. This is all, as he himſelf declares in his Commentaries, that *Julius Cæſar* ever attempted upon the *Germans*. But *Octavius* made War upon the *Rhæti* and *Vendelici*, by his Generals and Brothers, *Tiberius* and *Druſus*, and invaded that part of *Germany* now called *Weſtphalia*, by his General *Quintilius Varus*, from the Country of the *Ubii*, a People in Confederacy with the *Romans*. But this Army under the Command of *Varus*, was almoſt entirely cut off by *Arminius*, the General of the *Cheruſci*, between the Rivers *Amaſius* and *Lupia*. *Horace* has an excellent Ode to comfort *Virgil* on the Death of this *Quintilius Varus*.

Druſus was ſlain in *Germany*, leaving two Sons, *Germanicus*, a Man of extraordinary Merit, and *Claudius*. *Horace* in a learned Ode, as I have taken notice before, celebrates him as deſcended from *Claudius Nero*, who was the ſecond time Conſul with *M. Livius Solinator*, and deſtroyed *Aſdrubal*, the Brother of *Hannibal*, upon his Arrival in *Italy* with new Forces, near the River *Metaurus*. *Auguſtus* alſo ſubdued the *Aquitani*, *Pannonii*, *Dalmatians*, *Illyrians*, and the *Salaſſians*, Inhabitants of the *Alpes*. 'Tis reported that he often thought of quitting the Government of the Common-Wealth, till the conſideration that he could with little ſafety live a Private Life, and that it was a raſhneſs to commit that to the diſpoſal of many, made him alter thoſe Reſolutions.

In

In the thirty third Year of his Reign *Herod* the Great dyed, who was made King of *Judea* by *Mark Anthony* in the third Year of his *Triumvirate*: Eight Years after whoſe Death, *Archelaus* his Son and Succeſſor, was baniſhed to *Vienna*, a City of *Gallia*, or *France*. Authors inform us that *Octavius* kept on foot for the Guard of the Empire forty four Legions; three in *Ægypt*, as many in *Spain*, eight in *France*, and the *Low-Countries*. Some have attempted to give us an Account of the Yearly Expence of theſe Armies, amounting to 102000000 of Golden Crowns: That is, *viz.* * 272000 Yearly to every Legion, a Legion conſiſting of Six Thouſand Foot, and Five Hundred Horſe.

* According to this Diviſion it ought to be but 101968000.

Octavius is very much praiſed for his Eſteem of, and Liberality to Learned Men. The Poets of his Time of the greateſt Reputation, were *Varius*, *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Plotius*, *Valgius*, *Fuſcus*, the two *Viſci*, *Pollio*, *Meſſalla*, *Bibuli*, *Servius*, *Furnius*, and *Horace*, who deſires only that his Writings may pleaſe them, without valuing what the reſt of the World thought of them.

There was a continued Series of great Wits in *Rome* from the time of *M. Porcius Cato* and *Africanus* the elder, to the Reign of *Auguſtus*, which was almoſt the extremity of the flouriſhing of the *Latin* Tongue free from corruption; for from thence by degrees it degenerated from its Purity, till at laſt it was loſt in that Bar-

Barbariſm we now find it. *Tully* ſays, that Poets born at *Corduba*, have ſomething groſs and exotick in their Works; but what would have been his Judgment of thoſe Poets above a Hundred Years after him, not of thoſe born and educated in *Corduba*, but even in *Rome* it ſelf.

Tiberius the Son-in-Law, and Adopted Son of *Auguſtus*, pretended to be very unwilling to accept of the Empire, being with no ſmall difficulty brought to it by the humble and earneſt Entreaties of the Senate; and in the beginning of his Reign never diſpatch'd any Buſineſs of Moment without the Advice and Concurrence of the Senate: But he ſoon laid aſide the care of the Common-Wealth, and gave himſelf entirely up to his Pleaſures. In his Reign the *Parthians* poſſeſſed themſelves of *Armenia*, and the *Dacians* and *Sarmatians* of *Myſia*, the *Germans* invaded the *Gauls*; but all theſe blows to the Publick gave him very little concern.

Some great Divines have placed the Death of *Our Lord and Saviour* in the fifteenth Year of this Prince's Reign; but St. *Luke* ſays, he was in that Year baptized by St. *John*. In this time flouriſhed *M. Cocceius Nerva*, the Father and the Son, and *Caſſius Longinus*, great Lawyers.

The Father of *Tiberius* the Emperour, was *Tiberius Nero*, who had ſerved under *Caius Julius Cæſar* in the *Alexandrian* War.

Caius

Caius Caligula, the very ill Son of a very good Father, the before-mentioned *Germanicus*, ſucceeded *Tiberius* in the Empire, a perfect Monſter of Humane kind. 'Tis ſaid, that *Tiberius* in the twenty three Years of his Reign, had got together a vaſt and prodigious Treaſure of Gold, which *Caligula* ſquandred away in the firſt Year of his Reign. About the ſecond Year, *Herod Antipas*, the Son of *Herod* the Great, who had put to Death St. *John Baptiſt*, was baniſhed to *Lyons*, and *Herod Agrippa* ſucceeded him in the Kingdom of *Judea*, who put to Death St. *James* the Apoſtle.

Caligula being ſlain, his Uncle *Claudius* ſucceeded him, who upon the Revolt of *Britany*, went thither in Perſon, and upon the Recovery of part of that Iſland, returned home. In his Reign was a great and general Famine, which St. *Luke* mentions, as foretold by the Prophet *Agabus*.

Nero, the Succeſſor of *Claudius*, too plainly inſinuated that he intended in time to deſtroy the whole *Senatorian Order*. In his Reign the *Romans* and their Allies received a great blow in *Britany*. The Legions were diſgraced in *Armenia*, and *Syria* was with much ado kept from falling off. After which *Gallia* rebelled, under the Conduct of *Julius Vindex*, and *Spain* under *Sergius Galba*; and when he now at laſt began to think of reducing them to their Duty, and was preparing to go for *Gallia*, all his other Armies he had in his ſeveral Provinces

vinces rebelled. 'Tis evident from Hiſtory what a Cruel and Luxurious Prince he was, and therefore being declared an Enemy by the Senate, he with the aſſiſtance of a Slave of his ſlew himſelf. In his Reign flouriſhed *Seneca*, and *Lucan*, *Perſius*, and *Silius Italicus*, the laſt of which was Conſul in the laſt Year of it.

From this time began the Cuſtom of the Army's chooſing Emperours; and by this means *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire: For to him came over the Armies of *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, *Syria*, and *Judea*, from *A. Vitellius*, and took the Oath of Fidelity to him.

This Prince reduced *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Byzantium*, *Thrace*, *Samus*, *Cilicia*, and *Commogenia* into the form of *Roman* Provinces, and by the Conduct of his Son *Titus* overcame, and wholly deſtroyed the City of *Hieruſalem*.

Domitianus made War with the *Chatti*, *Dacians*, and *Sarmatians*, and Triumphed over them. In his time lived *Statius*, *Juvenal*, and *Martial*.

Trajane being adopted by *Cocceius Nerva*, and after made *Cæſar*, twice overcame the *Dacians*, when they rebelled, and ſubjugated them to the *Roman* Empire, and formed Colonies there. And marching with his Army againſt the *Armenians* and *Parthians*, by ſurrender and favour won them all to his Dominion, and from thence obtained the Sirname of *Parthicus*; but within ſome years after moſt

of

of theſe Nations ſubdued by him rebelled, eſpecially in *Armenia* and *Meſopotamia*. And the *Parthians*, as ſoon as he departed for *Italy*, depoſed the King he had eſtabliſhed among them.

Ælius Adrianus ſubdued the rebellious *Jews*. The cauſe of this War was, becauſe the *Jews* were very much diſturbed at his building a Temple to *Olympian Jove* in *Hieruſalem*, which he had rebuilt, and permitted them to Inhabit. He made a Progreſs through *France*, *Germany*, *Spain*, *Britany*; and he paſſed into *Mauritania*, and returned from the *Parthians* by *Aſia*, *Greece*, and *Sicily* to *Rome*. After which he once more went into *Africa*, whence returning to *Rome*, he made another Journey into *Greece* and *Aſia*, from whence he paſſed to *Arabia*, and ſo into *Ægypt*. Having ſummoned the Senate to meet, he recommended to them *Antoninus Pius*, who ſucceeded him, and was a lover of Peace, and endeavouring to render himſelf grateful to all Men, he retained the Foreign Kings and People in their Allegiance by Humanity and Learning. In his time flouriſhed theſe Lawyers: *Alburnus Valens Tuſcianus*, *Vinidius Verus*, *Vibius Marcellus*, *Arrianus*, *Tertullianus*, *Salvius Julianus*, *L. Voluſius Metianus*.

Marcus Antoninus, Sirnamed the Philoſopher, ſucceeded his Father *Antoninus Pius*, who made his Relation, *Lucius Aurelius Verus*, his Companion in the Empire, and by him brought the *Parthian* War to a Fortunate Concluſion, whilſt

whilſt he himſelf remained at home to Govern the Common-Wealth; and after the Death of *Verus*, Reigning alone, he was ſucceſsful in his *German* Expedition. He alſo beat the *Marcomanni*, the *Sarmates*, the *Vandals*, and the *Quadi*, who invaded *Pannonia*. For moſt of the Nations from *Illyria* to *Gallia* had entred into a Confederacy againſt the *Romans*.

The wicked and profligate Son of this Excellent Emperour, by his Generals overcame the *Moors* and *Dacians*, ſtifled the Diſturbances of the *Pannonians*, *Germany*, and *Britany*, which refuſed to ſubmit to his Government; whilſt himſelf all the while lived at *Rome* in all ſorts of Brutality and Cruelty.

Septimus Severus was engaged in a Civil War with *Niger* in *Aſia*, and *Albinus*, who ſollicited the *Gauls* to a Revolt. He had Succeſs againſt the *Parthians*, and reduced the *Jews* in *Syria*. He ſubdued *Abagatus* King of the *Perſians*, and the *Arabians* ſurrendred themſelves to him. He fortified *Britany* by building a Wall from Sea to Sea croſs the whole Iſland: And having ſubdued the Neighbouring People that infeſted the *Britains*, he dyed at *York*.

His Son *Baſſianus Antoninus Caracalla* invaded the *Parthians* and *Armenians*, and commanded *Papinianus*, Prefect of the Prætorian Cohorts, to be ſlain, becauſe he would not defend the Parricide. In this time lived a great many Lawyers, the Diſciples of *Papinianus*, viz. *Taruntius Paternus*, *Macer*, *Terentius Clemens*,

Clemens, *Menander*, *Archadius*, *Ruffinus*, *Papyrius*, *Fronto*, *Anthius*, *Maximus*, *Hermogenianus*, *Africanus*, *Florentinus*, *Trophonius*, *Juſtus Calliſtratus*, *Venuleius Celſus*.

Baſſianus being killed in *Aſia*, *Macrinus* ſucceeded him, who having but little Succeſs againſt *Artabanus* King of the *Parthians*, finding his Legions inclining to Revolt to *Heliogabalus*, the Son of *Baſſianus*, made Peace with him.

Alexander Severus, the Succeſſor of *Heliogabalus*, a Luxurious and Effeminate Prince, was a Man of Courage, and overcame *Artaxerxes* King of *Perſia*, and recovered *Meſopotamia*, loſt by *Heliogabalus*. And had Succeſs in *Mauritania*, *Illyria*, and *Armenia*, by the Conduct of his Generals. After which going to the *German* Wars, was ſlain by ſome of his Souldiers. The Lawyer *Ulpianus*, the Diſciple of *Papinianus*, was much favoured by him; and in his time in the ſame Science flouriſhed *Paulus*, *Pomponius*, and *Modeſtinus*.

Maximinus ſucceeded *Alexander*, who with his whole Power, compoſed of not only *Romans*, but alſo of *Moors*, *Oſdroennians*, and *Parthians*, whom *Alexander* had in his Army, went againſt the *Germans*, and having laid a great part of the Country waſt, burnt the Cities, and deſtroyed great numbers of Men, he enriched his Souldiers. Having reduced *Germany*, he came to *Syrmium*, and deſigned to invade the *Sarmates*. Nor did his Reſolutions of Conqueſt terminate there, purpoſing to extend the

Roman Empire as far as the Ocean, over all thoſe Nations which lay to the North of *Europe*. But the Army being diſguſted at his Cruelties, choſe *Gordianus* Emperour, which Choice the Senate confirmed, hating *Maximinus*, and declared him Enemy to *Rome*. But he reſolving to Revenge this, having harangu'd his Army, marched for *Rome*: Upon Information of which the Senate declare *Pupienus* and *Balbinus* Emperours, and deliver the Conduct of the War againſt *Maximinus* to *Pupienus*. But the Souldiers killed both him and his Son, as they were repoſing in their Tents under the Walls of *Aquilia*, which he then beſieged.

After which, *Pupienus* and *Balbinus* being ſlain two Years after their Election, by a Tumult of the Souldiers, the Government was devolv'd to Young *Gordianus*. Who in the Fourth Year of his Reign, by *Myſia* and *Thrace* paſſed into *Aſia* againſt the *Perſians*, and in thoſe Parts having ſubdued the Enemies of *Rome*, he paſſed by *Syria* to *Antioch*, which was then in poſſeſſion of the *Perſians*: But by frequent Battles with Succeſs, he obliged *Sapores* and the *Perſians* to retire within the Bounds of their own Country, who a little before were Formidable even to *Italy* it ſelf. In the Sixth Year of his Empire, he was ſlain by the Contrivance and Treachery of *Philip*, Præfect of the Prætorian Cohorts, in a Tumult he had raiſed for that purpoſe.

The ſame was the end of *Philip*, who ſent his Generals with an Army of *Romans* and their

their Allies againſt the *Scythians*, who invaded the Empire.

Decius being choſen his Succeſſor by the *Illyrian* Army, the Senate afterwards allowing of the Choice, firſt ſtifled the Commotions in *France*, and then having commended the care of the Common-Wealth to the Senate, with their conſent he and his Son his Companion in the Empire, went on an Expedition againſt the *Scythians*; who by Land and Sea, in *Thrace* and other Parts of the Empire committed great Davaſtations and Plunders; and having often worſted the Enemy in ſeveral Battles, and now hedg'd them into a narrow place, whence they could not eſcape him, had obtained a compleat and entire Victory over them, if *Gallus Hoſtilianus*, Governour of the Lower *Myſia*, had not diſcovered his Deſigns to the Foe, by which means it happened that both the Father and Son, betrayed by the Treaſon of *Gallus*, were ſlain by an Ambuſcade, after the Battle began.

Gallus was by one Legion, and the remaining part of the *Roman* Troops declared Emperour, and made a very diſhonourable and ignominious Peace with the *Scythians*, promiſing them a Yearly Tribute; a thing till that time unheard of, and much below the Dignity and Grandeur of the *Roman* Name. Which gave ſuch heart to the *Scythians*, that breaking the Peace, they ravaged *Dardania*, *Thrace*, *Theſſaly*, and *Macedon*; nor content with this, they burnt ſeveral Cities in *Aſia*. Encouraged

by the Example of the *Scythians*, ſeveral other Nations diſcovered themſelves Enemies to the *Romans*, and many others rebelled. The *Parthians* entred *Syria*, and took *Armenia*, driving the King *Tyridates* out of the Country.

The *Scythians* were grown to that Inſolence, that they threatned *Italy* it ſelf, and gave cauſe to imagine that they would perform great matters, if *Æmilianus*, the Governour of *Myſia*, encouraging his Souldiers with Promiſes and hopes of Rewards, had not routed them on the Frontiers of *Sarmatia*, and purſued them a great way, and plundered the Confines of their own Country. Who for this Victory was ſaluted Emperour by his Souldiers, and *Gallus* and his Son *Voluſianus*, whom he had made his Companion in the Empire, were both ſlain as they were marching to oppoſe him. In this time St. *Cyprian* Biſhop of *Carthage* flouriſhed: Among a great many of thoſe Epiſtles of his which are extant, there are ſome to *Lucius* Biſhop of *Rome*, whom he calls Brother and Colleague; but many more to *Cornelius*, in which he complains among other things, that thoſe who had been condemned by the Biſhops of *Africa* to be degraded from their Prieſthood, fled to *Rome* to have their Caſe better underſtood. Urging, that the place where the Crime was committed, was the moſt proper to have it judg'd: For every Paſtor has his proportion of the Flock committed to his Charge, of which they muſt give an Account to God. That therefore there ought

ought to be no Schiſm made of the Concordance and Agreement of the *Hierarchy*, and that the Judgment of thoſe was not to be deſpiſed, who had already decided the Cauſe in *Africa*.

In the mean while the Army that was in the *Alps* declares *Valerianus* Emperour, who was a Man of a Noble Family, which when the Souldiers of *Æmylianus* underſtood, they ſlew their Emperour, to avoid the engaging in new Troubles, and went over to *Valerianus*. *Æmylianus* when he was choſen Emperour, ſent word in his Letters to the Senate, that he would deliver *Thrace* and *Meſopotamia*, and all the Frontiers of the *Roman* Empire from Enemies, and recover the *Armenia's*.

Valerianus being gone againſt the *Perſians*, by the fault of one of his Commanders, was taken by *Sapores* King of *Perſia*, who could not be prevailed with by his Neighbouring Princes, and the Confederate Nations, to ſet his Priſoner at Liberty, they urging that the *Romans* always grew the more Obſtinate and Victorious by being overcome.

Valerianus being thus made Priſoner, his Son *Gallienus* ſucceeded him; who wholly neglecting the Government, gave himſelf over to Pleaſure and Luſt, which bred that general Contempt of him, that moſt of the Armies ſet up Emperours of their own in their ſeveral Provinces; that is, in *France*, *Spain*, the *Pannonia's*, *Illyria*, *Ægypt*, *Africa*, and other places; though moſt of them were in time

deſtroyed by Diſcords and Wars among themſelves.

In his Reign the *Goths* poſſeſs themſelves of *Thrace*, ravage *Macedon*, and beſiege *Theſſalonica*: And the *Scythians* invade *Bithynia*, *Cappadocia*, and *Aſia*. And from the *Euxine* Sea ſailing up the *Danube*, attempted the *Roman* Colonies. But *Gallienus* was of ſo ſupine and negligent a Nature, that he always returned a ridiculous and ſlighting Anſwer to thoſe that informed him of the Revolt of Provinces, and the Ruins of the Empire, as if the Common-Wealth and his Dignity were not at all diminiſhed by them. Wherefore being contemned both at home and abroad for the Sordidneſs of his Life, he created not a few Enemies to the Common-Wealth. The *Scythians* and *Goths*, and with them a great many other Nations entred into a Confederacy to deſtroy the *Roman* Empire with an Army of Three Hundred Thouſand Men, of which Number their Forces at that time conſiſted: But all theſe were deſtroyed by *Flavius Claudius*, who, *Gallienus* being ſlain, was made Emperour, a Man of great Courage, and worthy of a longer Life.

Aurelianus ſucceeded *Claudius*, having ſignalized his Valour in the Reign of *Claudius* in ſeveral places. He carried on the War in *Inſubria*, and againſt the *Marcomanni*, with a dubious Fortune, and great difficulty in the beginning, though afterwards with great Succeſs, when the Senate by his Command had conſulted

ſulted the Books of the *Sybils*, and given by them a Religious Opinion of the War. After which returning to *Rome*, he puniſhed ſome, who had endeavoured to raiſe Sedition there in his abſence: And then he began the War to recover all the Provinces of the Eaſt, which were left to *Zenobia*, a Woman of extraordinary Courage and Bravery, who was her ſelf the Inſtructor of her Children, by her Huſband *Odenatus*; who in the Reign of *Gallienus* had done many Noble Actions in thoſe Parts.

But whereſoever *Aurelianus* came the Enemies of the *Romans* were vanquiſhed, in *Illyria*, *Thrace*, and other places; and being at laſt entred the Enemies Country, he ſubdued it, after a dangerous and obſtinate Reſiſtance, and took the Queen, who confiding in the Force of the *Perſians*, and Auxiliary *Armenians*, fought it out with a great deal of Courage. The chief City of this Country he had ſubdued was *Palmyra*, which upon the Emperour's return to *Italy* rebelled, and ſlew the Governour and Garriſon placed there by him. Who coming back thither again, took and deſtroyed the City, killed Man, Woman, and Child, without reſpect to Age, Sex, or Condition. After which he reduced *Ægypt* that had revolted, and recovering all *Gallia* to the *Roman* Empire, he at laſt entred *Rome* in Triumph. From whence paſſing to the *Perſian* War through *Illyria*, he was ſlain by his Attendants.

After his Death there was an *Interregnum* for ſome time, which had not happened from *Romulus* to that time; but at laſt *Tacitus* ſucceeded him, who Reigning but for a few Months, perſormed nothing of any Conſequence. This Emperour was deſired by the Senate on his Death-Bed not to leave the Empire to his Children, but to ſome Man of known Worth, and that was *Probus*, who being received both by the Army and Senate, recovered the *Gallia's*, and overcame the *German Franks* that had invaded it, in ſeveral Battles. In *Illyria* he deſtroyed the *Sarmates*, and other Nations; and in his Journey through *Thrace*, by the Terror and Glory of his great Acquiſitions, he brought the Barbarous People to a ſtrict Alliance. He pacified *Aſia*, and by the Awe of his Name alone obliged the King of the *Perſians* to ſue for Peace; which having made, he returned into *Thrace*, and Tranſplanted the Foreign Nations he had overcome into the Country of the *Romans*, ſome of which remained faithful, others proved the contrary, though he reduced all that rebelled. Finally, after he had appeaſed all the Rebellions and Commotions in *France*, *Spain*, and *Britany*, and had begun his March through *Illyria* to the *Perſian* War, he was killed by the Treaſon of ſome of his own People.

In his time the Common-Wealth flouriſhed to a great degree, the Nations round about being all reduced to Peace and Tranquility, which made *Probus* ſay, that in a little time there

there would be no need of Legions, or Garriſons, which ſo much diſguſted the Souldery, that they thought fit to Murder him.

Carus ſucceeded *Probus*, who check'd the Inſolence of the *Sarmates*, that was now fluſh'd with the Death of *Probus*, and going againſt the *Perſians*, retook *Meſopotamia*, but Death prevented the further Progreſs of his Arms, which he had deſigned. The youngeſt of his two Sons, *Numerianus*, he had with him, to initiate him in the Art of War; the elder, *Carinus*, he left Governour of *Gallia*. *Numerianus* was ſlain by his Father-in-Law, to whom *Diocleſian* ſucceeded, with whom *Carinus* fought ſeveral Battles for the Empire, but being at laſt overcome, was ſlain. *Diocleſian* finding Tumults and Diſorders ſpring up in ſeveral places, made *Maximinianus* his Companion in the Empire, who reduced the *Gallia's* and *Africa*, as *Diocleſian* did *Ægypt*, having put to Death the cauſers of Sedition and Tumult. He brought alſo *Britany* back to the Dominion of the *Romans* Twelve Years after it had revolted. And to render the ſtate of the Common-Wealth the firmer, and better eſtabliſhed, that there might be no freſh Domeſtick Diſturbances about the Succeſſion, he adopted *Galerius*, and *Maximinianus*, *Conſtantius Chlorus*.

Diocleſian having ſent *Galerius* againſt *Narſes* King of *Perſia*, he was beaten, and loſt great part of his Army; but being commanded again to renew the War, he overcame the Enemy

my in a Memorable Battle, and penetrated farther into thoſe Eaſtern Parts than any Emperour, except *Trajane*; having taken *Cteſiphon*, he ſubdued all *Aſſyria*, and recovered five Provinces beyond *Tigris*, which had revolted from *Trajane*.

Diocleſian having thus compoſed the Affairs of *Aſia*, returned into *Europe*, in which the *Scythians*, *Sarmates*, *Alanes*, *Baſtarnæ*, *Carpi*, *Catti*, and *Quadi*, all lived in Peace. After which both he and *Maximianus* ſettling their Companions in the Empire, abdicated the Government; to *Conſtantius* were given the *Gallia's*, *Britany*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Africa*; and to *Galerius Illyria*, *Greece*, and *Aſia*.

At this time *Marcellus* was Biſhop of *Rome*, who publiſhed a Decree that's ſtill extant, that it was not Lawful for the Biſhops of the Church to call a Synod without the Authority of that See; and that it was not Lawful for them to Condemn any Biſhop, who had appealed to *Rome*. This Biſhop was of a ſmall and inconſiderable Fortune, as many of his Predeceſſors, when *Maxentius* followed the Emperour. Therefore 'tis eaſie to imagine, how probable 'tis, that he in theſe ſtraits, and hiding places, ſhould arrogate ſo much to himſelf, as to publiſh ſuch Decrees.

Conſtantius being dead at *York*, *Galerius* adopted *Severus* and *Maximinianus*. In the mean while the Prætorian Cohorts ſalute *Maxentius Cæſar* in *Rome*. *Severus* being ſlain, *Maximinianus* took *Licinius* for his Companion in the Empire.

Empire. Among theſe there were great Diſſentions, which made the Noble *Romans* invite *Conſtantine*, the Son of *Conſtantius*, who was in *Gallia*, to come and deliver the City from the Tyranny of *Maxentius*. Who paſſing into *Italy* with part of his Army, Engaging with *Maxentius*, won the Day, and after near *Rome* totally defeated his Army. Afterwards he had War with *Licinius*, who being beaten by him, and grown odious to his People, was killed by them. Some tell us, that the cauſe of this War was, that *Licinius* perſecuted the Chriſtians with a great deal of Cruelty, though *Conſtantine* had often preſs'd him to the contrary.

For from the Reſurrection of Chriſt to this Age, which was near Three Hundred Years, the Chriſtians were perſecuted in various manners. For to omit what the Holy Scripture mentions of St. *Stephen*, St. *James*, St. *John*, and St. *Peter* in Priſon, and delivered thence by an Angel: To ſay nothing of St. *Paul*, who from a ſevere Perſecutor of Chriſt, became a great Sufferer for him, refuſing no danger for his ſake. The *Roman* Emperours impoſed great and terrible Torments upon them at ſeveral times, particularly *Nero*, *Domitian*, *Trajane*, *Septimus Severus*, *Maximinus*, *Decius*, *Valerianus*, *Aurelianus*, *Diocleſian*, and *Maximinianus*. But *Conſtantine* coming to the Imperial Throne, and embracing the *Chriſtian Religion*, was the Refuge and Security for the Chriſtians to fly to.

And

And now began the Biſhops of *Rome* to be in ſome ſafety, all of whom before were almoſt put to Death, or Torments. There are reckoned from St. *Peter*, whom they will have the firſt, to this time, Thirty Three Biſhops, whoſe Decrees are inſerted in the Books of the Councils, but of them ſo many are ſo trivial, light, and diſſonant from the Goſpel, that probably they were the fictitious Products of ſome after Ages. But if they are true, then that ſaying of St. *Paul* may be very well applyed to them, that even in his time, the Man of Sin, and the Myſtery of Iniquity was beginning to work. There is a Decree extant attributed to *Aurelianus*, the Fourth Biſhop after St. *Peter*, in which he declares that the *Roman* Church was eſtabliſhed the Head of all other Churches by the Command and Inſtitution of Chriſt. To *Alexander*, the next but one to him, is laid a Decree for the mixing Water and Salt, and Conſecrating them to Purge the People, and drive away the Ambuſcades of the Devil.

But I pray how different are theſe things from the Majeſty of the Apoſtles, and the Writings of St. *John* the Evangeliſt, who lived almoſt to this time. I have only mentioned theſe two, that a judgment by them may be made of the reſt which are of the ſame ſtamp, and carry an apparent face of Ambition. And as the Diſcourſe is unclean, ſo the thing it ſelf is without Salt, which *Paul* requires in the Miniſters of the Church.

To

To this may be referred the Edict of *Conſtantine*, which is inſerted into theſe Books, and which is the Foundation and Strength of their Power: For that Cauſe which is there alledged for this immenſe Liberality is falſe, and can ſo be proved from Hiſtory. But granting this Emperour was ſo very Prodigal, 'tis probable he could not diſpoſe of this Right any further than his own Life, not having it in his power to deprive his Succeſſors of their Right, who were furniſhed with an equal Power, and were Guardians of the Common-Wealth as well as himſelf: For he that diminiſhes the Publick Revenues and Juriſdictions of the Common-Wealth, cannot be juſtly called the Father of his Country. Nor can he prejudicate and award to each according to his deſert.

By the Command of *Conſtantine* a Council was ſummoned to meet at *Nicea*, a City of *Bithynia*, where it met in a very great Number, and condemned the Opinion of *Arrius*, which was, that Chriſt was not the ſame ſubſtance with the Father.

Biſhops came to this Council, not only from *Europe* and *Aſia*, but from *Ægypt* and *Libya*. By this Council 'twas decreed, that *Ægypt*, *Libya*, and *Pentapolis*, ſhould reſerve their old Cuſtom; to wit, that they be all ſubject to the Biſhop of *Alexandria*, ſince the *Roman* Biſhop alſo uſed and retained this Method. Alſo that, *Antioch*, and other Churches ſhould each keep their ſeveral Priviledges.

After

After this Synod, *Euſtatius* broach ſeveral pernicious Opinions againſt Marriage, about new and unheard of Garments, of not eating Fleſh, and of quitting ones Poſſeſſions.

But theſe Opinions ſpreading ſo that a great many married People began to be divorced, and a great many Slaves running from their Maſters, ran to this new Habit, as they termed it: And the Women doing the ſame, forſook their Husbands; and the Miniſters of the Church who had Wives, and thoſe who eat Fleſh, were looked upon as impure, and odious to God; a Synod was called at *Gangra*, a City of *Paphlagonia*, where all the Teachers of this Doctrine and their followers were condemned.

Conſtantine being complemented by the Senate and People of *Rome* for the reſtoration of the Peace and Security he had beſtowed upon the Common-Wealth, wholly applyed himſelf to the Foreign Wars, and vanquiſhed the *Goths* and *Sarmates* in many Battles, who had made inroads into *Thrace*; and in his Old Age decreed War againſt the *Perſians*, who depopulated *Meſopotamia*: And when he came into *Aſia* with his Army, taking a Medicine for his Health, he dyed, not without the ſuſpicion of being poiſoned. This is the *Conſtantine* that was called the Great, and who removed the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Byzantium*, a City of *Thrace*, which from his own Name he called *Conſtantinople*. He began his Reign about the Three Hundred and Twelfth Year

Year after the Birth of Chriſt; and 'tis reported many ſtrange and unuſual Comets appeared before his Death.

He left three Sons, *Conſtantine*, *Conſtantius*, and *Conſtans*, among whom the Empire was divided: To *Conſtantine* fell part of the *Alps*, *France*, the *Low Countries*, *Spain*, *Britany*, the *Orcades*, *Ireland*, and *Thule*. To *Conſtans*, *Italy*, *Africa*, and the Iſlands *Illyria*, *Macedon*, *Achaia*, *Peloponneſus*, and *Greece*. To *Conſtantius*, *Aſia* and *Thrace*. *Conſtantine* not content with this Diviſion, invaded the Dominion of his Brother *Conſtans*; and being now come to *Aquileia*, coming to a Battle with the Forces of *Conſtans*, his Army being loſt, himſelf was ſlain. *Conſtans*, who in the mean while was engaged in the War againſt the *Getes* and *Sarmates* in *Dacia*, after this Victory I have mentioned came into *Italy*, and getting over the *Alps*, paſſed into *France*, and two years after the Death of his Brother had the whole ſurrendred to him, but was ſoon after killed by the perfidiouſneſs and Treaſon of *Magnentius*.

The Souldiers being before won and corrupted by Rewards, Salute this Traytor with the Title of Emperour. Which as ſoon as *Conſtantius* underſtood, who was the only ſurviving Brother of the three, leaving his Couſin-german and Brother-in-law *Gallus* his General in *Aſia*, came with a Powerful Army firſt into *Italy*, and then into *France*, and there in a very great Battle overcame *Magnentius*, who however eſcaping, ſent to deſire Peace; but

all

all terms being rejected by the Conquerour, he once more came to decide it by a Battle, but without Succeſs, whereupon flying to *Lyons* after the rout, and ſeeing his very followers endeavoured to ſurprize him, having no place to retreat to, he killed himſelf.

After this *Conſtantius* not being able to reclaim his Couſin *Gallus*, whom he left, as I have ſaid, General in *Aſia*, from abuſing that Power committed to his charge, he commanded him to be put to Death. After which he returned to *Aſia* to finiſh the *Perſian* War, which he was fain to delay a while by the Commotions cauſed by *Magnentius*. But becauſe at this time the *Germans* made Incurſions into the Provinces of *France*, and plundered and deſtroyed the Country, he adopted *Julian* the Brother of *Gallus*, and committed to him the Government and Defence of thoſe Countries.

Julian fighting ſeveral Battles with Succeſs, drove the Enemy beyond the *Rhine*; he took a great many Priſoners, and freed no leſs a number of *Roman* Souldiers that had formerly been taken, and near *Strasburg* almoſt entirely cut off the Enemy's whole Forces. Which made the Souldiers ſalute him not only *Cæſar*, but *Auguſtus*, and was then crowned with a Diadem, though, as he pretended, againſt his Will; for writing to *Conſtantius*, he endeavour'd to divert the Guilt of the Fact from himſelf. But *Conſtantius* extreamly reſenting the Inſolence, deſiſted from his *Perſian* Expedition, and by gentle and obliging means endeavouring

to

to keep the Neighbouring Nations to the Duties, he began his Journey towards *Europe*, to reduce *Julian* to his Duty; but before he had got out of *Asia*, being taken with a Fever, he dyed, naming *Julian* for his Succeſſor.

During the Reign of *Julian*, the Enemies of the *Roman* Empire kept themſelves within the Bounds of their own Countries, none daring on any ſide to cauſe any Diſturbance. Whilſt going againſt the *Perſians* waſted Country of *Aſſyria*, and came as far as the City *Cteſiphon*, having put the Army of the Enemy to flight; but at laſt retreating with his Army, he was fallen upon in the Rear by the rallied Foe, in which Engagement receiving a Wound, he preſently after dyed, an Enemy to the Name of Chriſt.

The Army having thus loſt their Leader, being reduced to great ſtraits, chooſe *Jovinian* Emperour. At this time lived *Julius*, *Biſhop* of *Rome*, the firſt of that Name, whoſe Letters to the Oriental Biſhops are extant, in which he more than once inſiſts upon the preheminence of his See, and that he alone, being the chief Biſhop by the ſingular Priviledge and Divine Decree, has the Lawful Authority of calling General Councils. One would wonder with what confidence he could write at that rate, when before him *Conſtantine* had ſummoned that of *Nice*, and a Hundred Years after, the Emperour *Martian* that of *Chalcedon*. He alſo pretends, that he alone, as Biſhop of that City, has the Right of Judging of the

Cauſes of Biſhops, and other great Affairs of the Church. But the Biſhops that were met at *Antioch* could not bear this his Arrogance, but ſent him a bold Anſwer, That he ought not to annul the Decrees made by them, but that, ſince they were of the ſame Degree and Dignity in the Church, as himſelf; for from thence the Goſpel of Chriſt firſt ſpread it ſelf into the World, and at laſt came to *Rome*. That if he perſiſted, and ſhould make any new Decrees, that they ſhould not obey him, or have any Communication with him, but take ſuch Meaſures as the buſineſs required.

In another Synod of that City, much more numerous, and before this, among other things they Decree what is the Duty of a Biſhop, what of a Metropolitan; if at any time matters of any greater conſequence ſhould come into Debate, for they Order, that if the Biſhops diſagree, the *Metropolitan* ſhall from the next Province procure ſome Judges to aſſiſt him in the deciding the matter. But if any Biſhop be condemned by them by a general Vote, for any Crime, that it ſhall not be in the Power of any other to retract it. They alſo Decree, That the Biſhop ſhall faithfully diſpence and beſtow the Sacred Goods for the uſe of the Poor; and that he himſelf, if there be a neceſſity for it, take out of them what will ſuffice him to ſubſiſt on, ſince St. *Paul* ſays, we ought to be content with Food and Cloaths. But if the Biſhop ſhould divert thoſe Goods to the private Advantage of himſelf, or his Relations,

lations, and commit the management of them to his Kindred, That the Irregularity be rectified by a Synod.

The Enemy preſſing upon him, *Jovinianus* made a diſhonourable and ignominious Peace. For he not only agreed to Surrender the five Provinces *Galerius* took beyond the River *Tigris*, and part of *Meſopotamia*; but alſo obliged himſelf not to aſſiſt the King of *Armenia*, an Allie and Friend of *Rome*. But returning with his Army homewards, he dyed in *Bithynia*.

The Army immediately choſe *Valentinian*. Emperour, who after he arrived at *Conſtantinople*, made his Brother *Valens* his Partner in the Empire, and committing thoſe Countries to his charge, went againſt the *Germans*, and ſubdued the *Saxons* near the Ocean. He is ſaid to have dyed in *France* with Anger. At which time his Brother *Valens* was in *Aſia*, to put a ſtop to the Progreſs of the *Perſian* Army, who breaking the Peace, were deſtroying *Armenia*, and renewing the War againſt the Empire; but returning from thence into *Europe* to oppoſe the *Hunns*, or *Tartars* and *Scythians*, who invaded *Pannonia*, *Epirus*, and *Theſſaly*, being worſted in a Battle againſt them, and wounded, he was conveyed into a Cottage, where he was burnt, the Enemy ſetting fire to it.

There is extant an Edict of theſe two Emperours, *Valentinian* and *Valens*, commanding all ſuch as fled from the Service of their Country and Employs, to the unactive Life of Contemplation and a Monaſtery, ſhould be dragged

out of their Retreats, and forced to ſerve as Souldiers againſt the Enemies, or loſe all the Benefits of Life, and their Endowments to be appropriated to the Uſe and Maintenance of ſuch as ventured their Lives in their Country's Service. The Enemy after this having beſieged *Conſtantinople*, being bought off with Money by the Emperour, at laſt raiſed the Siege. *Valentinian* having ſubdued the *Saxons*, made his Son *Gratianus* his Companion in the Empire.

Wherefore upon the Death of his Father and Uncle, *Gratian* ſucceeded both. And when the Common-Wealth was ſhook with Commotion and Diſturbances on every ſide, *Gratian* choſe *Theodoſius*, an excellent Commander, and ſent him into the Eaſt. He beat the *Hunns*, and drove the *Goths* out of the Confines of *Thrace*. After which *Gratian* by the Treaſon of one *Maximus*, one of his Commanders, was ſlain in *France*. *Auſonius*, ſome of whoſe Poems are ſtill extant, was his Maſter, and by him promoted to the Conſulſhip. His Son *Valentinian* was ſlain by a like Treaſon of *Arbogaſtes*, one of his Friends.

But the Traytors eſcaped not without their juſt Puniſhment, both of them being deſtroyed by the Emperour *Theodoſius*. *Maximus* being taken at *Aquileia*, was put to Death; and *Arbogaſtes* killed himſelf.

Theodoſius having thus deſtroyed the two Uſurpers and Tyrants, made his Sons, *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, his Companions in the Empire:

pire: And becauſe they were as yet but young' he conſtituted two Guardians over them; *Ruffinus* over *Arcadius*, and *Stillico* over *Honorius*, and not long after dyed. By his Command there was a Synod held at *Conſtantinople*, in which was condemned the Opinion of *Macedonius*, who denyed the Divinity of the Holy Ghoſt. Thoſe Fathers that met there, to the number of an Hundred and Fifty, ordained Biſhops there as well as at *Antioch*, which the Synod calls a true and more Ancient Catholick Church. And *Hieruſalem*, which it calls the Mother of all Churches. And theſe their Decrees they direct to *Damaſus* Biſhop of *Rome*, who had endeavoured to get them to that City.

St. *Hierom* in his Youth was intimate with *Damaſus*. This Remarkable Saying was his, That the Prieſthood was of equal Merit to a Biſhop, of what place ſoever, either of *Rome*, *Eugubium*, *Conſtantinople*, *Rhegium*, *Alexandria*, or any place elſe.

Theodoſius was a Man, as Hiſtory aſſures us, of great Piety, and received with a great deal of Patience, the Reprehenſion and Oppoſition of St. *Ambroſe*, Biſhop of *Milan*, when he denyed him entrance into the Church.

Arcadius Reigned in *Conſtantinople*, and *Honorius* at *Rome*. But *Ruffinus* the Tutor of the firſt ſollicited the King of the *Goths* to Invade the Emperour, hoping by that means to gain the Empire for himſelf. But the deſigned Treaſon being diſcovered, he was cut to pieces by the Souldiers.

Innocent the firſt *Roman* Biſhop of that Name, Excommunicated *Arcadius*, as we find it in the *Pontifical Law*, becauſe he conſented to the Baniſhment of St. *John Chryſoſtom* from his Church. At this time alſo flouriſhed St. *Auſtin* Biſhop of *Hippo*, who was preſent at the Third and Fourth Councils of *Carthage*, in which 'twas decreed, That no Biſhop ſhould have his Reſidence far from his Church: And that he ſhould not have a Pompous Equipage, but a plain and homely Furniture and Table, and raiſe themſelves Authority by their Faith and Integrity of Life. That they ſhould uſe the Revenues of the Church, as things lent, not as a Propriety. *Innocent* alſo wrote to St. *Auſtin*, and *Aurelius* Biſhop of *Carthage*, and exhorting them to mutual Prayers and Supplications, calls them Brothers, and fellow Prieſts. *Zozimus* ſucceeded *Innocent*, who praiſing the Decrees of the Fathers, and of Antiquity, ſays, That it is not Lawful ſo much as for the *Roman* See, as they call it, to change, or eſtabliſh any thing contrary to them. He alſo condemns the Cuſtom of his Time, when illiterate Fellows aſpired to the Sacerdotal Degree.

Boniface the Firſt ſucceeded *Zozimus*. At this time was the Sixth Council of *Carthage*, which was very numerous, where alſo was St. *Auſtin*. Whither *Boniface* ſent his Legates to inform them, that the Council of *Nice* had adjudged the Right of taking Cognizance of all Provinces to the Church of *Rome*: And therefore

therefore desired the Fathers there assembled, to Decree and confirm the same. They returned for Answer, That they were not sensible that the Council of *Nice* had decreed any such thing; however to search throughly into the truth of the matter, that they might proceed upon certain grounds, they agreed to send to the Churches of *Alexandria* and *Constantinople* for a true and faithful Copy of that Council; which when it arrived, discovered that the quite contrary was decreed; that is, that every Province should Judge of its own cause, and Appeal from the Bishops to the National Synod, and from thence to a General Council. At this time *Cyrillus* was Bishop of *Alexandria*. *Boniface* dyed before the Copy arrived at *Carthage*, but his Successor *Cælestinus* urging the same Point, received an Answer according to the form of the Decree.

After the Death of *Arcadius*, his Son *Theodosius* the Second succeeded him; in whose Reign, and at whose Command was held the Council of *Ephesus*: In which *Nestorius* was condemned, for denying that Christ was born God of the Virgin *Mary*. At this time St. *Austin* dyed. In *Italy Stillico*, the Tutor of *Honorius*, imitated the Treason of *Ruffinus*; for having allotted the *Goths* a Habitation in *France*, invited their King *Alaricus* into *Italy*, and to take *Rome*. Which happened in the Eleven Hundred and Sixty Second Year after its Foundation, and Four Hundred and twelfth after Christ.

The *Goths* remaining a few days at *Rome*, when they came to *Rhegium*, deſtroying the Country as they paſt, and paſſing into *Sicily*, they were caſt away, and loſt their King in the Wreck. But when after this, *Stilico* ſtill perſiſted in his Treacherous Deſigns of gaining the Empire for his Son *Eucherius*, being diſcovered, was put to Death by the Command of *Honorius*. *Alaricus* being loſt, as I have ſaid, in the Sea, the *Goths* choſe his Couſin *Adolphus* in his place, and ſo returned to *Rome*, and carry off what they had left before. But this King being killed, *Genſericus* ſucceeded him; and he being ſlain, *Wallis* was choſe King of the *Goths*. With whom *Conſtantine*, *Honorius* his General in *France*, and his Siſter's Husband, and afterwards his Companion in the Empire, entred into a League, and Amity; granting him that part of *France* called *Aquitain* to inhabit. At this time the *Scots* and *Picts* made Incurſions into *Britany*, but were drove out by the Forces ſent by the Emperour *Honorius* againſt them. The *Vandals* and *Alanes*, under the Conduct of *Genſericus* ravaged *Spain*.

After the Death of *Honorius*, his Siſter's Son *Valentinian* ſucceeded him in the Empire of the Weſt, whilſt *Theodoſius*, the Son of *Arcadius*, Reigned in *Conſtantinople*. At this time the *Vandals* and *Alanes*, being invited by the Factions and Diſſentions of the *Roman* Commanders in *Africa*, leaving *Spain*, paſſed thither, and with Fire and Sword laid the Country waſte.

After

After which Destruction, part of *Africa* was allotted to them for Habitations.

The *Goths*, who by the consent of the Emperour *Honorius* were possessed of *Aquitania*, unsatisfied with their Bounds, invaded and rifled their Neighbours, and besieged *Narbon*. But *Litorius* being sent to the Relief of the City, raised the Siege, and having put in Provisions, he at first fought the Enemy with Success, but afterwards having lost most part of his Army in the Battle, was himself taken Prisoner. Which Overthrow was so great, that the *Romans* were obliged to sue for Peace. And *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africa*, breaking the Peace, as I have said, he made with the *Romans*, takes *Carthage* by surprize, and commits a great many cruelties there. This City had now been Five Hundred, Fourscore and Five Years in the hands of the *Romans*.

Having taken *Carthage*, he passed over into *Sicily*, and made that Island taste severely of his Cruelty. Upon which at last *Theodosius* fitting out a Fleet, thought it time to prepare for a War against the *Vandals*. But the *Hunns* at the same time entring *Thrace* and *Illyria*, obliged him to recall his Army to defend those Countries. At this time the *Scots* and *Picts* renewing their Incursions into *Britany*, the *Britains* despairing of Relief from the *Romans*, sent to desire the Assistance of the *English*, a People of *Saxony*. Who being pleased with the Beauty of the Country, by degrees getting more numerous Forces over, destroying the *Britains*,

Britains, made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt part of the Iſland. A little after this time *Theodoſius* the Second dyed at *Conſtantinople*: In whoſe Reign there was an Eclipſe of the Sun, and a Comet that appeared from the fifteenth of *July* till *September*. *Martian* ſucceeded *Theodoſius* in the Empire of the Eaſt. *Valentinian* made Peace with *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, dividing *Africa* betwixt them.

About this time *Attila* King of the *Hunns*, having poſſeſſed himſelf of *Dacia* and *Pannonia*, and waſted and pillaged the Neighbouring Nations of *Macedon*, *Myſia*, and *Thrace*, thought of ſubduing the Weſtern part of the *Roman* Empire. But conſidering that this War would be of great difficulty, if the *Goths*, who were now at Peace with the *Romans*, ſhould aſſiſt them, he ſent Ambaſſadors to them, to deſire their Friendſhip and Confederacy. But *Ætius*, *Valentinian*'s General, prevented him there, and having confirmed the League with *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, made all neceſſary Preparations for the War.

But this could not alter the Reſolutions of *Attila*, who nevertheleſs ventured on, and in the Fields of *Campania* came to a Battle, in which 'tis reported were killed an Hundred and Fourſcore Thouſand Men, and among the reſt *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*. *Attila* being beaten, thought to kill himſelf, that he might not be taken by the Enemy alive. But when the Son of *Theodoric* retired home with his Forces by the Advice of *Ætius* to ſucceed his

his Father, *Attila* getting by that time to rally his ſcattered Troops, retreated to *Pannonia*, where having recruited his Army with new Forces, full of Indignation entred *Italy*. After a cloſe Siege takes, plunders, and burns *Aquileia*; after which he takes *Concordia*, *Patavia*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Brixia*, *Bergoma*, *Milan*, and *Papia*. And afterwards carrying Deſtruction with him, he encamped at the confluence of the *Mincius* and the *Po*. Where conſidering whether he ſhould with his Army march forward to *Rome*, *Leo*, the firſt of that Name, Biſhop of that City, came to him, and ſo brought his buſineſs about, that he prevailed with him not only to quit all thoughts of going to *Rome*, but made him alſo reſolve to forſake *Italy* it ſelf, and return to *Pannonia*, where he dyed not long after.

This is that *Leo*, many of whoſe Letters are extant to the Emperour *Theodoſius* the Second, and *Martian*. In which he partly excuſes his not coming to the Councils ſummoned by them, and deſires them not to be angry, that he only ſends his Legates thither; and partly deſires them that they would rather aſſign a place for the Council to meet in *Italy*, than *Aſia*: But he was diſappointed in his Requeſt.

In this Tempeſt raiſed by *Attila* in *Italy*, the City of *Venice* was founded; the moſt Noble and Wealthy Men of thoſe Parts retreating to thoſe little Iſlands and Hillocks in the Sea, as to a ſafe Harbour from the Publick Wreck.

Thus

Thus Humble was the beginning of this City, and almoſt the Effect of Deſpair, which now liſts its Head ſo high, and is increaſed to ſuch a Grandeur as we now behold it Miſtreſs of. There have been from the firſt riſe of it to this day, Fourſcore and Five *Doges* of this City: The firſt of which was *Paulus Anazastus*, in the Six Hundred Seventy Ninth Year of Chriſt, Two Hundred and Fifty Two Years after the Foundation of the City. *Valentinian* being after this ſlain, *Genſericus* with a Prodigious Army, increaſed by the acceſſion of the *Moors*, paſſed from *Africa* with his Fleet into *Italy*, and marches to *Rome*, which City being almoſt entirely deſerted by its Inhabitants, he takes; and being prevailed with by *Leo*, who, as I have ſaid, appeaſed the Fury of *Attila*, he ſet it not on fire, nor put the remaining part of the Citizens to the Sword: But having plundered the City, a great number of Captives were tranſported to *Carthage*. The Enemies after this commit great Slaughters and Depredations in *Campania*, deſtroying *Capua*, *Nola*, *Naples*, and other Cities, they put thoſe who ſurvived the fury of the Sword into Chains; and being now made Rich with the Spoils of *Italy*, they return to *Africa*.

Martian the Emperour of the Eaſt, being a Man that loved not Diſturbance, continued in Peace, uſing to ſay, that it was not worthy a Prince to have recourſe to Arms as long as it was in his power to live in Peace. In his Reign was the great Council of *Chalcedon*, where *Eutyches*,

Eutyches, confounding the two Natures of Chriſt, was condemned. There it was decreed, that no Prieſt ſhould have two Benefices. In thoſe Times Pluralities were unknown, which Cuſtom has now made ſo familiar to us, that there is nothing more common. And it was not long before our days that this among other Errors ſtole in upon the Church, for the Pope to beſtow two Biſhopricks on one Man. But if he would reſtore the Cuſtom that was obſerved in the Ages before this laſt in this Point, he would do his Duty: But ſince he will not do that, can we imagine he will ever permit Affairs to be regulated by the Rule of the Goſpel, and the Apoſtles and Primitive Times? But they loſe their Labour indeed, that think to meaſure the Acts of the Popes by the Method of Ancient Religion.

After a Reign of Seven Years *Martian* dies, and *Leo* ſucceeds him. After the departure of *Genſericus* for *Africa*, and the Death of *Valentinian*, *Acitus* ſucceeded in the Weſtern Empire, which was ſucceſſively poſſeſſed by *Majoranus*, *Severus*, *Anthemius*, and after them by ſeveral others of little or no Reputation in the World; who by mutual Quarrels and Stratagems deſtroyed one another, none of them enjoying a Reign of any long duration; ſo that the Weſtern part of the *Roman* Empire was in a very diſtracted and miſerable condition.

There

There is nothing of any conſequence mentioned of *Leo*, only that he entred into a Peace and Alliance with the *Goths*, who had invaded *Illyria*. To this Emperour are extant two or three Letters from *Leo* Biſhop of *Rome*. *Zeno Iſauricus* ſucceeded him. Among others that Reigned at *Rome* after *Valentinian*, was *Aguſtulus*, in whoſe time *Odoacer* with a great Army of *Heruli* and *Sciri* from *Pannonia* invaded *Italy*, and took and killed *Oreſtes* a Nobleman of *Rome*, who with his Army had retreated to *Papia*, which he alſo took, plunder'd, and burnt; and marching on, made himſelf Maſter of all the Country betwixt that and *Rome*. *Auguſtulus* deſpairing of his Affairs, voluntarily reſigned the Empire; *Odoacer* entring the City, gained the Kingdom of *Italy*, and reigned Fourteen Years without any Oppoſition. But at the expiration of that time, *Theodoricus* King of the *Oſtrogoths* being ſent from *Conſtantinople* by the Emperour *Zeno* into *Italy*, overcame the *Gepidæ* and *Bulgarians*, who oppoſed his paſſage; and marching through *Myſia* and *Pannonia*, he arrived at *Aquileia*, not far from which City he encamped; whither when *Odoacer* with his Army was come, they fought, and *Odoacer* being worſted, fled; but rallying his Men, came to a ſecond Battle near *Verona*, where being again beaten, and a great part of his Army loſt in the River *L'Adice*, and in flight, he with a precipitate Flight haſtened to *Rome*; but finding the Gates ſhut againſt him there, after he had burnt the adjacent Country,

try, retired to *Ravenna*, where after a Siege of Three Years, being ſurrendred to the Enemy, he was put to Death.

Theodoricus, by the Death of *Odoacer*, being now Lord of *Italy*, came to *Rome*, where he ſummoned two Councils of the Biſhops of the ſeveral Provinces of *Italy*, to Examine the Cauſe of *Symmachus* Biſhop of *Rome*, who was rejected by a great many, as one unworthy of the Dignity, and choſe by foul Play. This *Theodoricus*, according to ſome of the *Romaniſt* Writers, was an *Arrian:* But it was he who was Sirnamed *Veronenſis*, the Relation of that *Theodoric* that was ſlain in the Battle againſt *Attila* King of the *Hunns*. *Odoacer* was of the Nation of the *Rugii*, a People of *Germany* upon the *Baltick* Sea.

Theodoric to ſtrengthen himſelf, engaged the Kings of the *Vandals*, and the *Burgundians* to his Intereſt by Marriage. Whilſt Affairs went thus in *Italy*, there were great Revolutions in *Thrace*, *Africa*, and *Britany*, in which laſt the *Saxons* at laſt prevailed.

Zeno being dead, *Anaſtaſius* ſucceeded him in the Empire of *Conſtantinople*, who favoured ſome that were infected with the Opinion of *Eutyches*; which occaſioned a Difference betwixt him and *Gelaſius* Biſhop of *Rome*, who in ſeveral long Letters, diſſwaded him (as their Books aſſure us) that he ſhould not eſpouſe the Protection of them. For there were two things by which this World was governed, the Pontifical Authority, and the Regal Power.

But

But that the Charge and Duty of the Prieſthood was ſo much the greater, and more burdenſom, becauſe they were to anſwer for more than themſelves in the next World at the Tribunal of God. That it was true he was Supream of the Civil Power, but that he was ſubject to the Sacred Miniſtry, and depended upon their Judgment or Deciſion. And ſince it was fit the Prieſthood ſhould obey the Civil Laws, that he therefore ought not to refuſe ſubmiſſion to what the Prelates decreed in Sacred and Divine Matters. And ſince this Honour ought to be paid to all the Miniſters of the Church, that it was a neceſſary conſequence, that there ſhould be no leſs a deference to him, whom God by his own Word, and afterwards the conſent of the Church, had made Supream of the whole Order of the Prieſthood. He therefore adviſed him rather to yield to him as a Suppliant in this World, than to experience him an Accuſer in the next. To which is annexed his Decree about the Holy Scripture: In which he gives the firſt place to the *Roman* See, the next to that of *Alexandria*, and the third to *Antioch*. In the Reign of *Anaſtaſius* there were ſome Riſings in *Cilicia*, which were ſoon ſuppreſſed by taking off the Head of the Factions. At the ſame time the *Hunns* pillaged and deſtroyed *Armenia* and *Cappadocia*, and the *Getæ Macedon*, *Theſſaly*, and *Epirus*, both which the Emperour was fain to buy off with great Preſents and Loſſes.

About

About this time, that is, the Year of Grace Five Hundred, *Clodoverus* King of the *French*, casting off the Idolatrous Superstition, embraced the Christian Religion, after he had been long sollicited to it by his Wife, who was of the House of *Burgundy*. There is extant the Synod of *Orleance*, composed of Thirty *French* Bishops, in which it was decreed, *That if a Man that had committed a Rape, fled into the Church, should not be put to Death, though he had forced the Virgin, but that he should become a Slave, or redeem himself of the Maid he had injured.*

Anastasius was slain by a Thunder-bolt, or, according to the *Jus Pontificium*, by the bursting of his Bowels out; and *Justin* succeeded him, a Man, as Writers assure us, of a very mean Extract, and who had once been a Cow-keeper, which Employ he forsook for a Souldier's Life. This Emperour had some Differences about Religion with *Theodoric* King of the *Goths*, and Lord of *Italy*; but they proceeded not so far, as to break out into a War. *Alaricus*, the Grandson of *Theodoric*, succeeded him with the general Satisfaction and Applause of all the *Goths*.

In this time was *John*, the first of that Name, Bishop of *Rome*, who was sent Ambassador by *Theodoric* to *Constantinople*; where, as their Books inform us, he was received with a great deal of Honour, both by the People and Emperour. For they were not a little over-joyed, as they Phrase it, to see the Successor of St.

Peter now at laſt come to *Greece*; which Happineſs they had never had ſince the time of *Conſtantine* the Great, and *Sylveſter*: Though 'tis ſomething ſtrange they ſhould mention *Sylveſter*, ſince 'tis certain he never went into *Greece*; ſince when his Preſence was moſt required there in the Council of *Nice*, he ſtirred not from *Rome*, but ſent his Legates *Victor* and *Vincentius*, and afterwards held a Synod in *Rome* (as they ſay) in which he confirmed the Decrees of that Council. There is alſo extant a Conſolatory Epiſtle of this *John* the Firſt to the Biſhops of *Italy*, in which he admoniſhes them to mind their Charge with Courage, though *Theodoric*, corrupted with the *Arrian* Hereſie, threatned Deſtruction to them and all *Italy*.

After *Juſtin* ſucceeded his Siſter's Son *Juſtinian*. This Emperour began to think of reviving the Power of the Empire, and at firſt made *Beliſarius* the Generaliſſimo of all his Forces, and ſole Miniſter of State: Who in many great Battles overcame the *Perſians*, who made inroads into the Bounds of the *Roman* Empire, freed *Illyria* from the Devaſtations and Incurſions of the *Gepidæ* and *Bulgarians*. Obliged the *Parthians* to a Peace. Deſtroys the great Forces of the *Vandals* in *Africa*, takes their King, and recovers *Carthage*. From whence paſſing into *Sicily*, he received there the News of the Revolt in *Africa*; upon which returning thither again, he reduced them to their Duty. Coming at laſt into *Italy*, he took

Naples,

Naples, and plunder'd it, and beat the *Goths*, whoſe King then was *Theodatus*. Afterwards coming to *Rome*, he was received by all with a great deal of Love and Honour. Departing from whence, he takes a great many Towns, among the reſt *Peruſia*, where Engaging with *Vitiges* King of the *Goths*, he beat his Army, and took himſelf, and carried him to *Conſtantinople*. The *Goths* having recruited their Forces in *Piedmont*, chooſe for their King *Hildebrandus*; after him and two more, *Totilas* ſucceeded, who in the abſence of *Beliſarius* ravaging all *Italy*, beſieges, takes, plunders, and burns *Rome*. This made the Emperour recal him from the *Perſian* War, who again were fallen in upon *Syria*, and ſent him into *Italy*; where being arrived, he repleniſhes the City, being almoſt deſerted by the Inhabitants; after which coming to a Battle with the Enemy, he gained the Victory; and then ſailing into *Sicily* to make Stores of Proviſions, was by *Juſtinian* commanded home. Which made *Totilas* return to *Rome*, having recruited his Army. The Emperour ſends *Narſes* the Eunuch General of the *Italian* War, who drove the *Goths* entirely out of *Italy*, which was the eaſier effected by the Death of their King *Totilas*, by a Wound he received. This *Gothick* War laſted Eighteen Years. *Juſtinian* having recovered *Italy* and *Africa*, and made *Juſtin* his Grandſon by his Daughter, his Companion in the Empire, finiſhed his Reign by Death. Some Authors have ſaid, that this Prince was

a Man of ſmall Parts, being entirely guided by the Dictates of his Wife *Theodora*. *Tribonianus* the great Civilian was much in his favour; who deſtroying the Diſputations and Comments of the Ancients upon the Laws, collected out of them *Centones*, conveying to us only Fragments, which are now called *Pandects*. He had ſome Aſſiſtants in this Work, who are often mentioned. He alſo after this contracted the *Reſcripts* and Laws of the Emperours into one Book, and called it the *Code of Juſtinian*, which were before compriſed in three, under theſe Titles, *Gregorian*, *Hermogenian*, and *Theodoſian*. He made uſe of the help of ſome others, who are enumerated in the Preface of the Book.

There are ſome Authors that ſay this *Tribonianus* was a Covetous Man, who made and unmade Laws, as he Phraſes it, for a Bribe. In this *Code of Juſtinian*, there are a great many of his Laws which abrogate ſeveral of thoſe that were made before his Time. There is alſo added to this a particular Work, which contains only the Laws made by *Juſtinian* himſelf, and has his Name and Title throughout. This Emperour uſed this Noble *Beliſarius*, who did ſo many Glorious and Heroick Actions for him, with no leſs Cruelty than Ingratitude, putting out his Eyes in his Old Age.

In his Reign there were ſeveral Synods held at *Conſtantinople*, in which *Menna* the *Patriarch* of that City preſided, who in their Books is called, The moſt Holy and Univerſal. In the begin-

beginning of this *Code*, or body of *Civil Law*, there is a Letter from *Juſtinian* to *John* Arch-Biſhop of *Rome*, in which he calls him the Head of all Churches, and ſubjects all to him. Which Letter, though ſome learned Men are of Opinion that this is a forged Letter, yet granting it real, it is certain this Controverſie continued for ſeveral Years after, till the Biſhops of *Rome* increaſing their Wealth, carried the day, and with the Poſſeſſions of the Church eſtabliſhing their Preheminence, boaſt that to be of Divine Ordination, which was built up by the Hands of Men, and the Favour of Princes.

I have already mentioned the fraudulent Pretences of the Popes *Boniface* and *Cæleſtinus*, which were diſcovered by the ſixth Council of *Carthage* in the time of St. *Auſtin*; by which they would have perſwaded them, that the Council of *Nice* had Ordained that all the World ſhould Appeal to them. But in the time of *Juſtinian*, *Boniface* the Second was Biſhop of *Rome*: There is an Epiſtle of his extant, in which he very much accuſes *Aurelius*, who was Biſhop of *Carthage* in the time of that Council, and ſays, that he and his Companions, by the Inſtigation of the Devil, had oppoſed the *Roman* Church; and gives God Thanks, that *Eulalius*, the then Biſhop of *Carthage*, and the Succeſſor of *Aurelius*, was returned to the Amity of the Church of *Rome*. And then repeats the words of *Eulalius*, by which he condemns his Predeceſſors and Suc-

ceſſors, that either have, or ſhall endeavour to weaken the Priviledges of the *Holy Apoſtolical Roman Church.*

Agapetus, the next Pope but one to *Boniface*, depoſed *Anthemius* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, for denying two Natures in Chriſt; which was very much reſented by *Theodora* the Empreſs, who required his Succeſſor *Sylverius*, by *Beliſarius*, to reſtore him: And when there came in other Accuſations againſt him, *Beliſarius* depoſed and ſent him into Exile, putting *Vigilius* in his place, who alſo being ſummoned to *Conſtantinople*, refuſing to reſtore *Anthemius*, was puniſhed in the ſame manner: Whence 'tis apparent how ſubject the Biſhops of *Rome* were at this time to the Emperours.

Juſtin the Second being Emperour, the *Perſian* War broke out afreſh, with whom his General *Archelaus*, after he had fought ſome Battels with ſucceſs, made Peace. The Eunuch *Narſes*, after he had driven the *Goths* out of *Italy*, had the Government Sixteen Years; but being then recalled by the Letters of the Emperour, in which finding no Satisfaction, but a great deal of Ingratitude, he not only diſobeyed his Summons, but alſo thought of a means of Revenge: To which purpoſe he ſends to invite the *Lombards*, who were now Maſters of *Pannonia*, to come into *Italy*, which he informed them was the moſt Beautiful and Fruitful Country of the World. Upon which they came, and poſſeſſed themſelves of that part of *Italy*, which now bears their Name.

This

This *Juſtin* is ſaid to have inſtituted the Magiſtrates called *Exarchs*, whoſe chief Reſidence was at *Ravenna*, neglecting *Rome*: They were a kind of Vice-Roys of the Emperour, and appointed to each Town its ſeveral Governour. The *Italian* Authors pretend that this ſort of Government was the Ruin of *Italy*. *Narſes* dyed in *Rome*.

Tiberius ſucceeded *Juſtin*, who in his Life-time was made *Cæſar*, and his Companion in the Empire. He fought two Battles againſt the *Perſians* with Succeſs, and made Peace with the *Lombards*, whoſe Dominion at that time reached from the *Samnites* to the *Alps*, excepting only the City of *Rome*, which after they had for ſome time preſs'd with a cloſe Siege, they were forced by the fall of a great deal of Rain, and a violent Tempeſt, to raiſe it, and march off.

Mauritius the Son-in-law of *Tiberius* being made Emperour, by his Generals worſted the *Perſians* in ſeveral Battles, and then made Peace with them, and recalling his Army, he drove the *Scythians* out of *Myſia*, bridled the *Lombards* in *Italy*, and beat the *Hunns* out of *Pannonia*. But being grown odious to his Souldiers for his Covetouſneſs, was obliged to fly to *Chalcedon*, where he, his Wife, Children, and his whole Family was ſlain by *Phocas* a Centurion, who by the ſame Faction and Tumult was ſaluted Emperour. In the Reign of *Mauritius* there was a Comet appeared for ſix Months together. Then alſo *Mahomet* was born, of

whom I ſhall ſay more in the ſequel of this Hiſtory.

At this time *John*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, declared himſelf Univerſal Patriarch, but *Pelagius*, Biſhop of *Rome*, oppoſed him with a great deal of Violence, and declared all his Decrees void, and of no force. And his Succeſſor *Gregory* the Firſt, very much condemns him for this; and in the Council of *Chalcedon* profeſſes, that this Title and Honour had been given to his Predeceſſors, but that not one of them had aſſumed, or made uſe of it. He wrote alſo to the Emperour *Mauritius* to curb his Pride, ſince this touched his Authority, which could not be kept entire, if by aſſuming ſuch Power, the Patriarch were permitted to infringe it. But *Boniface* the Third, the next Pope but one to this *Gregory*, Writers aſſure us, gained the Supremacy from the Emperour *Phocas*, who publiſhed his Edicts and Patents for the confirmation of it.

In the Reign of *Phocas* the Empire received great Loſſes from the *Perſians*, who over-run *Meſopotamia* and *Aſſyria*, and meeting with no Oppoſition, paſſed on as far as *Aſia*; ſo great was the remiſs Supinity of the Emperour. Beſides *Germany*, *France*, *Spain*, and good part of *Italy* revolted; and the *Saracens* invaded and ravaged *Ægypt*: So that for his neglect of the Common-Wealth, and his Cruelty, he was killed, and *Heraclius* ſucceeded him. After which the *Perſians* through *Ægypt* invade *Africa*, and win it; and the *Scythians* harraſſed *Europe* in ſeveral places. At

At laſt *Heraclius* paſſed into *Aſia*, and when he could not obtain Peace of the *Perſians* by the moſt unequal terms he propoſed, and which were very diſhonourable to the *Roman* Name, he fought them much againſt his Inclinations, but beat them in one or two Battles. After which paſſing the *Tigris*, he deſtroy'd all the *Perſian* Country where-ever he came; but at laſt entred into an Alliance with *Sirochus* King of *Perſia*, who mounted the Throne by the Death of his own Father. *Africa*, *Ægypt*, and whatever the *Perſians* had taken from the Empire, was reſtored to him, and it was agreed that the River *Tigris* ſhould be the Bounds of both Empires.

After which the *Saracens*, who had ſerved *Heraclius* in theſe Wars, being by him defrauded of their Pay, revolted to *Mahomet*, under whoſe Conduct they took *Damaſcus*, plunder'd *Ægypt*, and ſubdu'd *Arabia*, and fought againſt the *Perſians* with Succeſs.

Mahomet was born of obſcure Parents, but of a cunning and bold Nature; he in time enriched himſelf by Marriage, and getting Authority by his Politick Devices, he ſet up a new Doctrine, very agreeable to the Senſes, but for the moſt part in its ſelf very ridiculous and fooliſh, by this means propoſing to gain the Minds of Men to himſelf, and ſo the more firmly eſtabliſh his Kingdom. And though this Fire might in the beginning have been eaſily extinguiſhed, yet being a little neglected, it ſoon grew to an immenſe greatneſs. And from

from this time the *Roman* Empire in the Eaſt continually decreaſed, by the falling off of Provinces and Nations.

In the Reign of *Heraclius* was the Fourth Council of *Toledo*, where it was decreed that the Error of a great many of the *Spaniſh* Prieſts of ſaying the Lord's Prayer only on the Lord's Day, ſhould be regulated. And that the *Revelations* of St. *John* ſhould be explained in the Church from Eaſter to Whitſontide. In this time the *Goths* reigned in *Spain*, whoſe Government (as all Foreign Power uſually is) being uneaſie to the Native *Spaniards*, they thought of ſome new Revolution. This Synod laid a great Penalty on any one that ſhould enter into any Conſpiracy againſt the *Gallick* Nation; and that at the Death of the Kings, the Nobility and Clergy of the whole Kingdom, in a Publick Aſſembly ſhould chooſe a Succeſſor: Which was repeated again in ſeveral of their following Conventions. They alſo forbid *Allelujah* to be ſung in the Churches in Lent, ſince it was a *Hebrew* word, which ſignified Joy and Triumph, whereas that was a time of Sorrow and Grief.

Conſtans the Son of *Conſtantine*, and Grandſon of *Heraclius*, ſucceeded him, who was very much worſted in a Sea-Engagement againſt the *Saracens*, who upon that took *Rhodes*, and would have made a farther Progreſs, if it had not been for Animoſities and Factions among themſelves, which made them conclude a Truce for two Years with the *Romans*. Having got

got this breathing time, the Emperour with his Army paſſed into *Italy*, on pretence, as he gave out, to free it from the Enemy; but when he came to *Tarentum*, he took *Luceria*, and ſeveral other places of *Apulia*, which belonged to the *Lombards*, and deſtroyed them. In his March to *Naples*, the *Lombards* routed the Rear of his Army.

Being admitted peaceably into *Rome*, he at laſt plundered it of all its Ornaments, and after a ſmall ſtay there, paſſed into *Sicily*, where he was killed in a Bath; and Differences ariſing after his Death about the Succeſſion, the *Saracens* taking hold of the Opportunity, with a great Fleet land in *Sicily*, and commit a prodigious Slaughter of Men, and take *Syracuſa*, bearing off with them all thoſe Spoils *Conſtans* had brought from *Rome*.

Conſtantine the Fourth ſucceeded *Conſtans*, he was vulgarly called *Barbatus*, who after ſome Years War with the *Saracens*, at laſt overcame them, and obliged them to ſue for Peace, agreeing to a Truce for Thirty Years, and to pay the Emperour a Yearly Tribute. This Succeſs made the Enemies of the *Romans* in the Weſt ſeek alſo for Peace. But the *Bulgarians* invaded *Thrace*, though in time they were brought to an Agreement, and both the *Myſia's* yielded to them; though afterwards being encouraged by the remiſneſs of the *Romans*, breaking the Peace, they again tranſgreſs their Bounds, and attacqued the Forces of the Empire.

This

This Emperour is ſaid to have been the firſt who ordained that he ſhould be Lawfully Biſhop of *Rome*, who was choſen by the Clergy, and People, and Army of *Rome*. For till then, the Biſhops of that City were nominated by the Emperour, or his Deputy-Governours of *Italy*, and depended on their Confirmation. There is extant to this Emperour a long Letter of Pope *Leo* the Second, in which he condemns all manner of Hereticks, and praiſes him to the Skies for his Protection of Religion, and his Liberality, and Magnificence; and ſays, the Church does not a little Triumph, which has got ſo great and good a Defender. In his Reign was the Sixth Council of *Conſtantinople*, compoſed of an Hundred and Fifty Biſhops. About the end of which are mentioned the Canons of the Apoſtles, as they are called, but in obſcure words. But *Gratian* produces the contrary Opinions: For he ſays there are ſome who affirm, that they were writ by ſome Hereticks, and exploded by the Primitive Church, and placed among the *Apocryphal* Writings. But *Zepherinus* the ſixteenth Biſhop of *Rome*, is ſaid to have approved of them, and after him, this Sixth Synod of *Conſtantinople*, which ended in the Reign of *Juſtinian* the Second, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Fourth. In ſhort, the whole matter is full of uncertainty, the very number of the Canons being controverted; for ſome will have them to be Fifty, ſome Sixty, and others Eighty four, in which Number they are extant. From whence

whence we may naturally ſuppoſe they increaſed by theſe degrees, and though they flowed from ſeveral Hands, all went under the ſame Name. At this time too 'tis ſaid the Arch-Biſhop of *Ravenna* ſubmitted to the Biſhop of *Rome*, whereas after the Exarchs had made that City their Reſidence, they would not in the leaſt give place to the *Roman* Prelates.

Juſtinian ſucceeded his Father, who governed the Empire with little Policy and Advantage, but breaking the League his Father had made with the *Saracens* and *Bulgarians*, was compelled to ſue to both of them for Peace. And a little after being depoſed for his Cruelty, and his Noſe and Ears cut off, was baniſhed, whilſt *Leontius* ſucceeded him in the Imperial Throne, who had been two Years in Priſon on ſuſpicion of his having aſpired to the Empire.

In the midſt of theſe Diſturbances the *Saracens* invade *Africa*, and two Years after were driven out of it again. The *Roman* Souldiers, who were left to Guard *Africa*, ſeeing the Supinity and Negligence in the management of all his Affairs, fearing that upon the return of the *Saracens*, whoſe Power was then very formidable, they ſhould again be diſpoſſeſſed, declare *Tiberius* Emperour. Who coming to *Conſtantinople*, takes *Leontius*, and cutting off his Noſe, puts him in Chains, and Ordains a new *Exarch* in *Italy*. Theſe Diſtractions in the Empire gave Courage to the *Saracens*, with

a powerful and Numerous Army to paſs out of *Ægypt* into *Africa*, making themſelves Maſters of which and *Libya*, they over-run almoſt all *Spain*.

Juſtinian in the mean time, who was baniſhed by *Leontius*, by the help of *Trebellius* King of *Bulgaria*, takes *Conſtantinople*, and ſeizing both *Leontius* and *Tiberius*, put them to Death. And after a Reign of Six Years full of Cruelty, and even Ingratitude to *Trebellius*, was at laſt killed with his Son *Tiberius* in a Battle againſt *Philippicus Bardanes*, to whom the Army revolted. *Philippicus* was declared a Schiſmatick by Pope *Conſtantine*; and in the end his Eyes being put out by his followers, was ſucceeded by *Anaſtaſius* the Second: Who ſending a Noble Fleet to *Rhodes* againſt the *Saracens*, made an *Eccleſiaſtick* Commander, whom the Souldiers refuſed to Obey, and in the Sedition declared *Theodoſius* Emperour, a Man of mean and obſcure Extract, who tacking about, inſtead of ſailing to *Rhodes*, returned to *Conſtantinople*, where having worſted *Anaſtaſius* in the Battle, he obliged him to become a Religious, as he himſelf did not long after, being depoſed by the General of his Forces.

About this time, being the Seven Hundred and Seventeenth Year from the Nativity of Chriſt, the *Moors* invade *Spain*, and poſſeſs themſelves of the greateſt part of it, *Rodoric* being King of *Spain*, whom the *Goths* had elected.

In

In the Reign of *Leo* the *Saracens* having wasted *Thrace*, beſieged *Conſtantinople* for Three Years together both by Sea and Land, but being almoſt all deſtroyed by the Plague, they were obliged to retire home. *Leo* was extreamly enraged at *Gregory* the Second Biſhop of *Rome*, and wrote to his Exarch to deſtroy him by ſome means or other. The *Lombards* eſpouſed the Pope's Cauſe, and defended him, not for any Love they bore him, but by thoſe Diviſions to enlarge their own Dominions, which they effected by taking a great many Towns that belonged to the *Exarchate*. There are ſome Epiſtles of this *Gregory* extant to the *Thuringians*, in which he admoniſhes them daily to increaſe in the Knowledge of God. And to the *Saxons*, earneſtly perſwading them from the Adoration of Idols. He employed one *Boniface* in this Miſſion into *Germany*.

Leo caſts all the Images and Pictures of Saints out of the Churches, and commands the Pope to do the ſame; but he was ſo far from complying with him, that upon the Emperour's perſeverance, denounced great Penalties againſt him.

His Son *Conſtantine* the Fifth, Sirnamed *Copronymus*, ſucceeded him, who was of the ſame Opinion in Religion as his Father, and going with a great Fleet to *Ægypt*, to recover *Alexandria* from the *Saracens*, receiving an Expreſs of the Tumult, and Choice of *Artabaſtus* to the Empire, returned to *Conſtantinople*, takes the City, and puts out the Eyes of *Artabaſtus*.

This

This Emperour as well as his Father had great Differences with *Gregory* the Third, Biſhop of *Rome*, who ſending his Nuncio's, excommunicated him; and when his Meſſengers were caſt into Priſon, he ſummoned a Council, in which it was decreed, That whoſoever ſhould hereafter demoliſh the Pictures and Images of Saints, or ſo much as abuſe them, ſhould be caſt out of the Boſom of the Church: After which he cauſed many Statues to be erected in the Churches, which he adorned with all the Magnificence he was able.

After *Gregory* the Third ſucceeded *Zachary*, from whom there is an Epiſtle extant to *Boniface*, a Biſhop in *Germany*; the ſame as is evident that was ſent thither by *Gregory* the Second, as I have before related. He anſwers the deſires of *Boniface*, and grants that *Merſeburgh*, *Bamberg*, and *Erphurdia* be made Epiſcopal Sees. He alſo gives him leave to go to *Carlomannus*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, who deſired to have a Synod meet in ſome City of *France*: Exhorting him to be very Zealous for the Reformation of the Manners of the Church, particularly, that he ſhould degrade Adulterers and Polygamiſts from the Sacerdotal Orders; for ſince it was not Lawful for any one after he had taken Holy Orders, to have to do with one Wife, much leſs could it be Lawful for them to have Plurality of Wives. For that what St. *Paul* ſays of a Biſhop's having but one Wife, ought to be underſtood of the time paſt, not preſent; that is, that he that deſires

to

to be admitted into the Sacerdotal Order ſhould never have had but one Wife. To this Epiſtle is ſubjoyn'd the Edict of *Carlomannus*, who ſtiles himſelf Duke, or General of the *French*, in which he ordained that there ſhould be a Synod held every Year in his Preſence: And Commands the Prieſts that were guilty of Whoring and Adultery, ſhould be turned out of their Cures. He alſo forbid them Hunting and Hawking, Commanding them to have no Woman at home in their Houſes; but not a word of their Wives.

About this time *Aiſtolphus* demanded a Yearly Tribute of *Rome*, threatning them with dire effects of his Indignation, if they they failed of paying it. *Stephen*, then Biſhop of *Rome*, when he could not appeaſe him with Gifts nor Supplications, ſent to *Conſtantine*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople* for help; but finding none come from thence, ſent to *Pepin*, who was lately made King of *France*, as I ſhall preſently relate, to implore his Aſſiſtance: Who paſſing into *Italy*, beſieged *Papia*, and obliged the King of the *Lombards* to Conditions of Peace. But upon his return to *France*, *Aiſtolphus* with greater Indignation renews the War againſt *Rome*; but *Pepin* being again ſollicited for help, came into *Italy*, and at laſt had the Exarchate ſurrendred by the *Lombards* into his hands, which conſiſted of theſe Cities of note, *Ravenna*, *Favemia*, *Cæſena*, *Forum Livii*, *Forum Populi*, *Bononia*, *Rhegia*, *Parma*, *Placentia*. All this Country was given by *Pepin*,

as they report, to the Pope, though the Emperour desired he would restore it to him, as being a Member of the Empire, and not of the *Roman* Church.

Leo the Fourth succeeded his Father *Constantine*, who undertook one only Expedition into *Syria*, where being repulsed, he returned home, and soon after dyed, leaving his Son *Constantine* the Sixth of his own Religion. But when he was too Young to Govern, his Mother *Irene* was Regent of the Empire for him: But coming to Age, deposed his Mother, and began a cruel Reign, and when for that Reason there were several Conspiracies formed against him, among many others he punished his Uncle *Nicephorus*, and put out his Eyes: And at last by the contrivance of his Mother he himself had his Eyes put out, and soon after dyed of Grief. Upon which the Government came again into the hands of his Mother *Irene*; but being four Years after deposed and banished, was succeeded by that *Nicephorus* I mentioned just now.

But in the midst of these Tumults of *Constantinople*, *Charles* King of *France* grew very Famous. Who having ended the *Aquitanick* War, sollicited by the entreaties of *Adrian* Bishop of *Rome*, marched into *Italy* with his Army; and as his Father *Pepin* had subdued *Aistulphus* King of the *Lombards*, so he, after a long Siege, took *Desiderias*, the Successor of *Aistulphus*, who had made all *Italy*, especially *Adrian*, very weary of him; beat his Son *Adalgi-*

Adalgiſius out of his Kingdom, and drove him entirely out of *Italy*.

The Emperours being from the time of *Conſtantine* ſo remote from *Italy* as *Conſtantinople*, almoſt wholly neglected it, being hindred from its Defence either by Foreign or Civil Wars, eſpecially in the time of the Invaſion of the *Lombards*. Next many of them were at variance with the Biſhops of *Rome*, which did not a little contribute to the more eaſie Succeſs of the *Lombards*. Which was the reaſon that the Popes were fain to look out for Defence from Foreigners; and none in thoſe days being of ſo great and formidable a Power as the Houſe of *France*, which had raiſed it ſelf by its great and many Victories, they had recourſe to that, as to their only Port, and Haven of Security.

In this ſame manner *Leo* the Third, the Succeſſor of *Adrian*, being infeſted with the violence of his Enemies in *Rome*, implored the aſſiſtance of *Charles* the Son of *Pepin*, who being the fourth time come to *Rome*, was ſaluted Emperour both by the Pope and all the People; which happened in the midſt of the Factions and Tumults of *Conſtantinople*, ſo that the time and condition of the Common-wealth ſeemed all to conſpire this Revolution.

Thus the Empire of the Weſt was tranſlated to the *Germans*: For there is no doubt but *Pepin* and *Charles* were *Germans*. This was in the Eight Hundred and firſt Year after Chriſt.

From the Reign of *Nicephorus*, the Emperours of the East were continually in Wars and Civil Distractions: First, the *Bulgarians* had frequent War with them on one side, and then the *Saracens* on the other coming out of *Africa*, first took the Isle of *Crete*, and after that *Sicily*; and from thence wasted and harrassed *Asia*. And last of all, the *Turks*, a People of *Scythia*.

From *Nicephorus* to *Constantine Palæologus* the last, there are counted Fifty *Greek* Emperours, among which were several Women, but most of them remiss and unactive Princes.

In the Reign of *Constantine Monomachus*, the Twentieth Emperor after *Nicephorus*, the *Turks*, who by degrees rose from an obscure Origine, harrassed great part of *Asia*; and every day increasing their Forces, at last established their Monarchy; not a new, and Fifth Monarchy, but out of that part of the *Roman* Empire which was in the East. The first Prince of that Monarchy was *Ottoman*, in the Year of our Lord One Thousand Three Hundred.

Mahomet, the Second of that Name, the Great Grandfather of the present Grand Signior *Solyman*, taking *Constantinople*, and killing *Constantine Palæologus*, destroyed the Succession of the Empire, and with it almost all the Foot-steps of our Religion in those Parts.

The *Turks* even to our days are Masters of *Asia*, *Syria*, *Ægypt*, *Mesopotamia*, *Judea*, *Rhodes*, all *Greece*, *Thrace*, *Macedon*, *Illyria*, and both the *Mysia's*, and lately one of the *Pannonia's*, and part of *Africa*. Here-

Heretofore the Churches of *Hieruſalem*, *Antioch*, *Conſtantinople*, and *Rome*, have much contended for the Supremacy, but chiefly the two laſt, as I have already made appear. The *Turk* at laſt put an end to this ſtrife, leaving ſcarce any track of a Church, or a Chriſtian Congregation in any of the other three places; and the ſtate of the other that remains, and now Triumphs alone freed from her Antagoniſt, we too plainly behold.

Having thus ſhewn how the Eaſtern part of the *Roman* Empire was entirely ruined, and brought under the ſubjection of new Maſters. I ſhall now proceed to give an Account how the Weſtern Monarchy decayed, till it came to its laſt Expiration, and received new Maſters.

But here it will not be amiſs to conſider in ſhort, with what a wondrous Game of Fortune, that Auguſt and Noble Glory of Empire was tranſlated from thoſe Ancient *Roman* Families, to Strangers and Foreigners; for ſome were born in *Spain*, ſome in *France*, others in *Pannonia*, *Dacia*, *Dardania*, *Dalmatia*, *Thrace*, and *Cappadocia*.

Firſt, the uncertain and miſerable Condition of the Emperours is worth our Obſervation: For their Safety, Power, and Life, were not repoſed in the Senate, and People of *Rome*, but in the Will and Power of the Souldiers; which would make one wonder any Man in his wits, ſhould be deſirous of Dignity, to which there was ſuch inſeparable Dangers and

Injuries annexed. For from the time of *Julius Cæsar*, who was slain in the Face of the Senate, to *Charles* the Great, there were about Thirty Emperours murdered, and Four killed themselves: And there was scarce one of them so good, and so accomplished, but that the Army would spy something in them to find fault with; they were equally uneasie under the Government of the good Emperours, as well as under that of the bad, and murdered them on the least occasion of Tumult, whom they had forced even against their wills to assume the Imperial Purple; as it happened to *Ætius Pertinax*: The Senate stood in awe of the Emperour, but he had a frail dependance on the wavering, and corrupted Mind and Pleasure of a luxurious and unruly Army. The *Veterane* Legions that had served *Cæsar* in *Africa*, *Spain*, and *France*, took up this Boldness after the Death of their Leader *Caius Julius Cæsar*. And *Cicero*, deploring the Misfortune of it, says, They are indeed Men of Courage, and brave Souldiers; but their Successes have so flush'd them, that they grow too insolent and headstrong, making all our Counsels truckle to their Force.

The End of the Second Book.

Jo. Sleidan

Of the Four

Monarchies.

BOOK III.

'TIS neceſſary to premiſe ſomething of the *Germans*, from whom *Charles* the Great derived his Origine, before I Diſcourſe of his Actions, on whom, as I have ſhewed in the former Book, the Empire of the Weſt was devolved.

Firſt, 'tis evident from Hiſtory that the *Germans* often paſſed the *Rhine* into *Gallia*, to poſſeſs themſelves of that Country, whoſe Fertility made them deſire to inhabit it. For the *Theutoni* invading *Gallia*, were driven out by *Caius Marius* in his Conſulſhip. After this the

Averni and *Hedui*, Nations of *Gallia*, contending for the Command of each other, the *Germans* being invited in by the Preſents and Entreaties of the *Averni* and *Sequani*, entred *Gallia* at firſt with no very numerous Army, but increaſing by degrees, became Maſters of a great part of that Country, under their King *Arioviſtus*. But *Cæſar* worſted them, and when they returned to beſiege the Camp of the *Romans* in the War they made againſt the *Eburones*, a People of *Gallia*, they were deſtroyed at the Confluence of the *Meyne* and the *Rhine* by *Cæſar*.

Many Years after this they contained themſelves within their own Bounds, the *Roman* Emperours invading them; but they never let ſlip any Opportunity that offered it ſelf of making Incurſions into *Gallia*, and with the Spoils of the Country to enrich themſelves. Thus in the Reign of *Gallienus*, a Voluptuous and Supine Prince, they made an Invaſion of it, and grew to that Power there, that it was with no ſmall difficulty, that the Emperour *Probus*, the fourth from *Gallienus*, drove them out.

Julian, the General of the Emperour *Conſtantius* in *Gallia*, had Wars with them. Afterwards in the Reign of *Honorius*, the *Goths* entred *Gallia*, and obliged the Emperour, engaged in ſeveral other Wars, to give them *Aquitania* to inhabit.

On the other hand, the *French*, a People of *Germany*, invading *Gallia* by the *Low Countries*, ſubduing

ſubduing the *Treviri*, *Menapii*, *Eburones*, *Morini*, *Nervii*, *Ambiani*, *Bellovaci*, *Sueſſiones*, ſeated themſelves in that part of *Gallia*, which to this day from them is called *France*; the *Metropolis* of which Country is *Paris*, not far from whence is St. *Denis*, the place of the Sepulchres of the *French* Kings, even to our time.

Having thus enlarged their Dominions, poſſeſſing before a great part of *Germany*, that is, all that part which reaches to the River *Meyne* and the *Rhine*, they not only with eaſe defended themſelves againſt the Invaſions of others, but alſo carryed the War into the Countries of others when they pleaſed; the *Roman* Empire every day falling to decay, both in *Aſia* and *Africa*. And whilſt the *Lombards* governed in *Italy*, they very much enlarged their Dominion in *Gallia*, where after the ſucceſſive Reign of many of their Kings, the Kingdom came to *Pepin*, and his Son *Charles* the Great. *Charles Martel*, the Father of *Pepin*, who was not King, but High Conſtable, or Steward of the Palace, ſubdued the *Bavarians* and *Suevians*. For according to the *French* Hiſtories, the Kings of *France* a great while before this time had only the empty Name of Royalty, without any Authority, that being wholly in the Hands of the High Stewards or Conſtables of the Palace. The Kings, degenerating from the Vertue and Courage of their Anceſtors, gave themſelves entirely up Devotees to Luxury and Pleaſure, without any thoughts or regard to the Government of the Kingdom; this

this made the management of Affairs fall into the hands of the High Conſtable, who as the Kings increaſed in Supinity and Negligence, increaſed their Power.

On this occaſion *Pepin*, that was Conſtable of the Palace to *Childerick*, upon a debate of the Matter before Pope *Zachary*, obtained the Kingdom.

Mention of this is made in that which is called the *Gratian Decree*, *viz.* That the Pope had Authority to Depoſe Kings. But the Title and Inſcription of that place is falſe. For whereas there were two Emperours that were named *Anaſtaſius*, this can be attributed to neither of them: For one reigned more than Two Hundred, and the other Thirty Seven Years before this happened; and after that time there was no Pope of the Name of *Gelaſius*. I thought good to add this for the Inſtruction of the Readers, that they may with the more Prdence and Caution read the Books of the *Romaniſts*. For there are more Examples than one, that their chief care is to give the Face of Antiquity to their Laws, which would gain them the greater Veneration and Authority.

Pepin beſides his ſuppreſſing the *Lombards* in *Italy*, at the Entreaties of the Pope, as I related, made War againſt the *Saxons*, and after that againſt the *Aquitanians*, and having taken their Duke or Leader, put him to Death. And when after the Death of *Pepin*, which ſoon enſued, they rebelled, *Charles* the Great, when he was King, with no ſmall Labour and Fatigue

tigue at laſt finiſhed both Wars. The *Saxon* War continued for Thirty Three Years, in which time he performed other things; for he not only ſubdued to his Dominion the *Bavarians*, who rebelled under the Conduct of *Taſſilo* their Captain, but twice made a Deſcent into *Italy* againſt the *Lombards*, and reduced the whole Country, *Campania* and all, and regulated it with Laws. He alſo reduced to their Obedience that part of *France*, called by *Cæſar Armoricæ*, and now *Little Britany*, when they refuſed to pay the Annual Tribute to the Kings of *France*, which they had formerly been obliged to. And paſſing into *Spain* with his Army, he met with Succeſs againſt the *Saracens*; but returning through the *Pyrenæan* Foreſts, falling into the Ambuſcade of the *Gaſgoins*, a People of *Aquitain*, he was very much worſted. He alſo in Eight Years time overcame the *Hunns*, who then inhabited *Pannonia*; and by his Generals he humbled the *Bohemians*. His laſt War was with the *Danes*, or *Normans*, who with their Fleet deſtroyed the Sea-Coaſts of *Germany* and *France*. By the performance of all theſe great Actions, he gained the Appellation of Great. For whereas the Kings of *France* before him were Maſters only of that part of *Germany* which is betwixt *Saxony* and the *Rhine*, and betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Sale*; and *Suevia*, and *Bavaria*; he added to them all *Saxony*, both the *Pannonia's*, *Dacia*, *Iſtria*, *Ireland*, and the Mediterranean part of *Dalmatia*. And whereas the

the Kings of *France* before him had poſſeſſed in *France* only that part which lies betwixt the *Rhine* and the *Loir*, the Ocean and the *Balearick* Sea; he added all *Aquitain*, and the *Pyrenæan* Hills, as far as the River *Iberus*, now called *Rio Tiuto*, and *Azeche*, and (what indeed ought to have been firſt placed) all *Italy*, from the *Alps*, as far as the extreameſt part of *Calabria*: And finally, returning the fourth time to *Rome*, was by Pope *Leo* the Third, and all the *Roman* People with one voice ſaluted Emperour, and *Auguſtus*, in the Thirty third Year of his Reign.

Thus the Weſtern part of the *Roman* Empire, torn to pieces, as evidently appears from what I have already ſaid, after the Seat of Empire was tranſlated from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*, was reſtored by the Emperour *Charles*, and as it were received a new Face, ſo many, and ſo great Provinces being reſtored to one Body, by his Valour and Succeſs.

Nicephorus, Emperour of the Eaſt, was not a little diſguſted at this Promotion of *Charles*, but he by a great deal of Modeſty and Affability, and the Preſents he ſent him, ſo gained upon him, that they entred into a Friendſhip, and Alliance, agreeing upon the certain Bounds of each Empire.

Beſides ſeveral other Conventions, he held a Council at *Rhemes*, in which it was decreed, That the Biſhops ſhould conſult the Scripture with a great deal of Diligence, and explain to the People the Word of God. The Synod

of

of *Mentz* was held the Year before he dyed; and in the fore-going Years those of *Tours*, *Chalons*, and *Arles*, for the Regulation of the Churches, as the Writers of those Times say.

After a Life so gloriously spent, having declared his Son *Lewis* his Heir, he dyed at *Aix*, a City in the *Low-Countries*, in the Seventieth Year of his Age, and in the Year of our Lord Eight Hundred and Fourteen, Fourteen Years after he was chosen Emperour; being the first of the *German* Nation that was exalted to that Dignity.

In his Reign there were but Twenty One Metropolitan Cities in *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*: *Rome*, *Ravenna*, *Milan*, *Triuli*, *Gradus*, *Cologn*, *Mentz*, *Salisburg*, *Trier*, *Rouan*, *Senones*, *Besançon*, *Lyons*, *Rhemes*, *Arles*, *Vienna*, *Munster*, *Tours*, *Yverdun*, *Burdeaux*, *Bituriges*.

His Father *Pepin* committed to the charge of the Popes the Exarchate, which he had taken from the *Lombards*, as I have said History informs us, whereas they pretend he gave it them, but that is very much doubted by some.

His sworn Secretary and Favourite *Eginhardus* says, that St. *Peter*'s Church at *Rome* was above others very dear to him, and that he bestowed a great deal of Gold, Silver, and Jewels upon it, besides a great many Presents sent to the Popes. For his principal desire was, that the City of *Rome* should regain its Ancient Authority by his means; and that the Church of St. *Peter* should not only be secure under

under his Protection and Patronage, but alſo be more flouriſhing in Riches than the reſt. This is all that he mentions, without a word of the Gift of thoſe great Cities which belonged to the Empire. Nay, Hiſtory aſſures us, that in his fourth Progreſs into *Italy*, when he was made Emperour, he not only regulated all Affairs of State of all *Italy*, and the City and Biſhop of *Rome*, but alſo Eccleſiaſtick and Private Affairs. For before he was Emperour, when after he had diſpoſſeſſed *Deſiderius*, King of the *Lombards*, of *Italy*, he came to *Rome*, there was a Council held, and in it, as their Books aſſure us, *Adrian* and the whole Synod granted him the power of Nominating and Confirming the Popes, and Ordering the whole Apoſtolical See, as they call it.

Eginhardus attributes to *Charles* a great many Vertues worthy a Prince, and a Man of Courage: *Temperance*, *Modeſty*, *Frugality*, *Zeal for Religion*, *Learning*, *Eloquence*, *Skill in both the Greek and Latin Tongues*: To which may be added, his great care that his Children ſhould have an Education that might furniſh them with the like Qualifications. 'Tis alſo ſaid he Founded the Univerſity of *Paris*, partly of his own accord, and partly by the intimation of *Albinus*, who, as *Eginhardus* ſays, inſtructed him in the Arts and Sciences.

He alſo gave *German* Names to the Twelve Months, and Winds, which we make uſe of to this day; whereas before, as the ſame Author affirms, the *French* uſed ſometimes the *Latin*,

Latin, and ſometimes barbarous Appellations.

Thus far I have only as it were premiſed what I promiſed of the *Germans*, and of the Acts of *Charles* the Great. Now in a ſhort Method I ſhall proceed to give an Account how this Weſtern part of the *Roman* Empire, ſcarce reſtored to its Preſtine Dignity by him, by degrees decayed again, and came entirely to nothing: And being divided into ſeveral parts, was made the Dominions of ſeveral Princes, who poſſeſs them as their own proper Right, without paying any Acknowledgment to the Fountain from whence they ſprung. So that that great Name of the *Roman* Empire, which once made ſuch a noiſe in the World, is nothing now but a very faint ſhadow of what it was, being contracted from that vaſt extent it then had, to a very ſmall part of *Europe* in *Germany*. Laſt of all, I'le explain how *Daniel* foretold this viciſſitude of theſe Empires, and the fall of that of *Rome*.

Lewis, the Son of *Charles*, and the Second *German* Emperour, renewed the League with *Leo Armenius* the *Greek* Emperour, and Pope *Leo* dying in the third Year of his Reign, his Succeſſor *Stephen* the Fourth, came into *France*, and crowned him at *Rhemes*. *Paſchal*, the Succeſſor of *Stephen*, by his Legates endeavoured to clear himſelf to the Emperour, for accepting the Pontificate without the Interpoſition of his Authority, aſſuring him it was forced upon him much againſt his will. The *Ro-*

maniſts

manists Books affirm, that the Emperour *Lewis* confirmed to *Paschal*, and his Successors the Possession of the Endowments of the Church, and allowed a free Election, that whomsoever the People of *Rome* should think worthy of that Dignity, that he should be accepted as Pope. But I cannot conceive that much Faith is to be put in those Books; for there is such a difference among them, and they are writ with such a confusion of time and place, that 'tis no easie matter to judge what to follow.

Lewis had three Sons, *Lotharius*, whom he made his Companion in the Empire; *Charles*, whom he made Prince of *Aquitain* after the Death of his Brother *Pepin*; and *Lewis*, to whom he gave *Bavaria*. He was taken by his Sons, who had entred into a Conspiracy against him, and forced into a Monastery by them in *Compeigne*, a Town in the Country of *Soissons*. The Writers of the *French* Annals say, that the Clergy meeting at *Aix*, caused this Tumult, and made his Sons undertake so unnatural an impious an Action, because he endeavoured to reform their Pride and Luxury. But six Months after being set at Liberty, he was restored to the Throne, to the great Joy and Satisfaction of the People.

Because this place seems to require it, I shall here in short observe, that there were a great many National Synods held in *France*. For besides what I have mentioned, there were held several at these following places; *Troy*, a City of

of *Champian*, *Rhemes*, *Tours*, *Gervovia*, *Digeon*, *Paris*, *Lyons*, *Vienna*, *Aviniogn*, *Cheasteauneuf*, and *Orleans*. For as often as the ſtate of Affairs required it, the King of *France* ſummon'd the Clergy and Nobility to meet, and redreſs the Publick Grievances. In this manner *Lewis* the Twelfth, who had great Differences with the Pope, called a Council at *Tours* and *Lyons*, in the Year 1510 and 1511.

But to return to our Hiſtory. *Lewis* being dead and buried at *Meto*, his Son *Lotharius* ſucceeded him, who had War with his Brothers. Which being ended in a new Diviſion, to *Lewis* was aſſigned *Germany*, and part of *France*, from the *Maes* to the *Rhine*. To *Charles*, *France* from the *Maes* to the *Britannick* Ocean, and the *Pyrenæan* Mountains. To *Lotharius*, beſides the Prerogative of being Emperour, *Italy*, and the Province of *Narbone*.

His Son *Lewis* the Second ſucceeded him, who drove back the *Saracens*, that made a Deſcent into *Italy*. In his Reign, among other Popes, *Adrian* the Second was choſen, without the concurrence of the Emperour, by the Nobility, Citizens, and Clergy of *Rome*, as their Authors affirm. For though the Ambaſſadors of the Emperour were in the City, yet they were not called to the Election; which when they very much reſented, they were anſwered, that this was not done out of diſreſpect to the Emperour, only out of Caution to prevent a Neceſſity, which elſe might by Cuſtom be impoſed upon their Poſterity, of

having the Ambaſſadors of the future Emperours preſent, ſo making their Inſpection material to the Elections of the Popes. With which Anſwer, they aſſure us, the Ambaſſadors were not only well ſatisfied, but alſo with a great deal of Submiſſion in reſpect of his high Office, ſaluted the Pope upon his Election

But here you may obſerve a wondrous variety and uncertainty in their Writings. For if *Lewis* the Firſt granted them a free Election, what Reaſon had *Lewis* the Second his Grandſon, to take it as an Injury offered him by it? But let the Matter of Fact be as it will as to this particular, yet the Title as it is in the Centones of *Gratian* is apparently falſe. For 'tis attributed to *Gregory* the Fourth, who dyed Twenty two Years before *Adrian* the Second was Pope; and could he write the Hiſtory of theſe Tranſactions after he was dead?

The immediate Predeceſſor of *Adrian* was *Nicholas* the Firſt, who wrote a very prolix Letter, which is yet extant, to the *Greek* Emperour *Michael*, about his Power and Authority over all Churches. For at *Conſtantinople* they had depoſed *Ignatius*, the Biſhop of that City, and put *Photius* in his place, without conſulting the Biſhop of *Rome*. They had alſo caſt out the Images out of the Churches: Which made the Pope exclaim with no little Vehemence againſt him. There are alſo ſeveral of his Decrees extant, full of the Papal Majeſty.

Charles,

Charles, who, as I have ſaid, was King of *France*, with a great deal of celerity paſſed into *Italy*, notwithſtanding the Oppoſition of his elder Brother *Lewis*, King of *Germany*, and was inſtalled by *John* the Third, Pope of *Rome*. But coming a ſecond time into *Italy*, upon the deſire of the Pope, to defend it againſt the Incurſions of the *Saracens*, who again had invaded *Campania*, he dyed at *Mantua*.

His Son *Lewis*, Sirnamed *Balbus*, ſucceeded him, but reigned but two Years. From whom the Empire came to *Charles* the Groſs, the Son of *Lewis* King of *Germany*; both whoſe Brothers being dead, all *Italy*, *Germany*, and *France* fell to him. He drove away the *Saracens*, that infeſted *Italy*, and maintained a War for ſome time againſt the *Normans*, a People of the Lower *Germany*, who harraſſed the *Low-Countries*; but at laſt he allotted them that part of *France* called *Normandy*, which they poſſeſs to this day. He was ſucceeded by *Arnolphus* his Brother's Son, an excellent Prince, who marching into *Italy* to relieve Pope *Formoſus* againſt his Enemies, took *Rome*, and puniſhed the Mutineers. In his Reign the *Hungarians* being driven out of *Scythia*, invade *Pannonia*, and marching forward into *Germany* in the Reign of *Lewis* the Third, Son of *Arnolphus*, and gaining a great Victory near the River *Læchus*, ruinated all *Bavaria*, *Suevia*, *Franconia*, and *Saxony*, with Slaughter, Fire and Sword.

In the time of this Emperour was held a Council of Twenty two *German* Biſhops, in the City of *Tiburia*, which once ſtood upon the River *Mayen*, where among other things 'twas decreed, that no body ſhould make Money of the burying of the Dead, and that none of the Laity ſhould be buryed in the Church.

At this time broke out a great Diſturbance in *Italy*; for *Berengarius*, and other Noble *Lombards*, who had been in great favour with *Charles the Bald*, in the time of *Charles the Groſs*, entred into a Conſpiracy againſt *France*; but when their Endeavours were to little purpoſe, they turned them to *Italy*, where having had long differences betwixt themſelves, made *Italy* (as the ſeat of War always will) ſuffer by them. But at laſt *Berengarius* having got the Victory, obtained the Kingdom of *Italy*, who put out the Eyes of the Emperour *Lewis*, when he was taken by him, after he had fought with his Army againſt him.

At the ſame time, to compleat the Miſery of *Italy*, it was harraſſed by the barbarous Invaſions of the *Africans*, *Hungarians*, and *Saracens*. This being the wretched and deplorable condition of this Beautiful Country, under the *Berengarii*, *Hugh*, *Rodulphus*, *Lotharius*, and *Albertus*, the Emperour *Lewis* dying in the midſt of theſe Diſtractions; the *Germans*, but chiefly thoſe of *Franconia* and *Saxony*, ſaluted *Otho*, Prince of *Saxony* and *Thuringia*, Emperour; but he being old, perſwaded them to make

make choice of *Conrade* Duke of *Franconia*, who being received to the Empire, manag'd all Affairs by the Counſel of *Otho*: After whoſe Death, when himſelf was very ill, calling the Nobility together, deſired them to chooſe *Henry* the Son of *Otho*, who was then abſent. This *Henry* was called *Auceps*, or the Falconer.

Thus we ſee how the Imperial Dignity paſſed from the Houſe of *France*, and the Family of *Charles* the Great, to the Houſe of *Saxony*. Theſe two Emperours, *Conrade* and *Henry*, were not inſtalled by the Pope, and are therefore by ſome Authors not reckoned in the number of the Emperours. 'Tis ſaid that *Henry* refuſed it, when the Pope offered to perform the Ceremony, ſaying, he was ſatisfied with the Suffrages and Votes of good Men.

After this, *Arnolphus Malus*, Duke of *Bavaria*, had a Deſign to make himſelf Emperour; but when both Armies were come to *Ratisbone*, and ready for Battle, the Emperour ſummoned him to a Private Interview, in which urging that he wasElected by the greateſt part of the *German* People, perſwaded him not to hazard the Lives of ſo many Thouſand Men, moſt of which were guiltleſs, and ignorant of the cauſe of the War; by which Diſcourſes having altered his Reſolutions, they ſeparated without any Battle.

Burchardus, Duke of *Suevia*, rebelled too, but being awed by the Power of the Emperour, he ſurrendred himſelf. The *Hungarians* made freſh Incurſions into *Saxony*, but their Leader being taken Priſoner, they agreed to a Truce for Nine Years. After which, the Emperour bringing his Subjects to Military Diſcipline, ſubdued the *Dalmatians*, took *Prague*, and *Wenceſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, and made that Country Tributary to the Empire. He gained a great Victory over the *Hungarians*, who upon the expiration of the Truce, invaded *Saxony* again, and diſtributed the Tribute that they uſed to pay to the *Hungarians*, among the Poor. He deſigned to go to *Rome*, but he was hindred by Sickneſs, he therefore ordain'd his eldeſt Son *Otho* his Heir and Succeſſor in the Empire. He was engaged in a War with the *Bohemians*, who then rebelled, for ſeveral Years; he alſo put the *Hungarians* to flight, who had entred *Franconia*, and paſſed the *Rhine*, with a Reſolution of falling in upon *Saxony*. He ſubdued *Burgundy*, and afterwards marching into *Italy* with a great Army, having deſtroyed the *Berengii*, he there married his ſecond Wife *Adelheyda*. With which Match his Son *Luitholdus* being offended, conſpired againſt him, and his Brother-in-law *Conrade*, Duke of *Suevia*, and had a great many followers in his Treaſon: But being by his Father beſieged in *Ratisbone*, and reduced to Extremity, he then applyed himſelf for Pardon to his Father, who granted his deſire.

After

After this the *Hungarians*, having deſtroyed part of *France*, came with a far greater Power than ever down upon *Germany*, and in a large Plain near the City of *Ausburgh*, which has its Name from the River *Læchus*; thither the Emperour marches with an Army of *Saxons*, *French*, *Suevians*, *Bavarians*, and *Bohemians*, and after a long and doubtful Fight, cut them almoſt entirely off, and hanged up ſeveral of their petty Princes.

From whence returning into *Saxony*, he deſigned a Progreſs into *Italy*; but before his departure he made his Son *Otho* his Companion in the Empire. Being arrived at *Rome*, he called a Council, in which he preſided, and depoſed Pope *John* the Twelfth, and ſubſtituted *Leo* the Eighth in his place. There is extant a Decree in the *Pontifical Jus*, by which, in imitation of *Adrian* the Firſt, he declares, that he confers on *Otho*, and the Emperours his Succeſſors for ever, the Power of Ordering the Apoſtolical See, of Electing and Confirming the Popes; and lays a heavy *Anathema* on them who Conſecrate Biſhops without the Approbation of the Emperour. Beſides another Decree, contradictory to ſome Particulars of the former. There is added the form of the Oath by which 'tis ſaid the Emperour *Otho* bound himſelf to Pope *John*; but they forgot to incert what *John* this was, and what *Otho*. But it is a ſtrange thing to me, that things of ſuch great Conſequence ſhould be writ with ſo much negligence. If *Otho* the Firſt had

taken this Oath, it might have been immediately objected to him, for whereas he ſwears in this form which is extant, That he ſhall not endanger any Pope's Life, nor depoſe them from their Authority and Dignity. Which is not very conſiſtent with his depoſing *John* preſently after, and placed another in his room. Let any Man reconcile theſe Differences if they can, I profeſs it's beyond my power.

Upon new Commotions in *Italy*, *Otho* went thither again, but having ſuppreſs'd them, returning home, he dyed in the beginning of *May*, and was buried at *Magdeburgh* in the Year of Chriſt Nine Hundred and Twenty Four. For his great Acquiſitions and Vertues, he merited the Name of Great.

Henry, Duke of *Bavaria*, rebelled againſt *Otho* the Second, but he was reduced to his Duty by force of Arms.

In this time *Lotharius* was King of *France*, whoſe Brother *Charles* the Emperour made Duke of *Lorrain*, on Condition he ſhould be Feudatory to the Empire. For the Annals ſay, that the Emperour *Henry* had gained this Province from *Charles the Simple*, King of *France*, and left the Succeſſion of it to his Poſterity. *Lotharius* being highly offended at this, he with incredible ſpeed drew a great Army down to *Aix*, and had like to have deſtroy'd the Emperor, whom he there ſurpriz'd. But the Emperour reſolving to Revenge the Inſolence, with his Army marched almoſt as far as *Paris*, and after ſeveral Loſſes ſuſtained on both ſides, they made Peace.

After

After which returning home, he paſſed into *Italy*, and invaded the *Grecians* that held *Calabria* and *Apulia*; but loſing his Army in the Attempt, he fled away by Sea, where being taken by Pirates, after they had rifled him, they ſet him on Shore, whence coming to *Rome*, rallying the remains of his Army, he beſieged, took, and burnt *Beneventum*. A little after he dyed of a Wound he got in a Battle againſt the *Greeks* and *Saracens*, and was buryed at *Rome*.

His Son *Otho* was by the conſent of the Nobility received as his Succeſſor, and Inſtalled at *Aix*; he preferred *Bruno* a *German* to the *Roman* See, under the Name of *Gregory* the Fifth. *Creſcentius* the *Roman* Conſul ſet up the Biſhop of *Placentia* againſt him, but the Emperour coming to *Rome*, inflicted an Ignominious Puniſhment on *Creſcentius* and his Aſſociates, and put out the Eyes of *John* the Seventeenth. And becauſe there were perpetual Feuds and Diſcords about the Succeſſion of the Empire, he ordained, by the aſſiſtance of the Pope, that a certain number of the Princes of *Germany* ſhould have the Right and Power for the future of Electing Emperours, that ſo none in time to come ſhould pretend to that Dignity as Hereditary. This Decree was made about the Year of Chriſt 1000.

In this time in *France* Reigned *Robert*, a lover of Peace and Learning. He is celebrated in the Annals for the Builder of a great many Churches, and endowing them with Magni-

Magnificent Benefices, and for going to *Rome* on Pilgrimage.

The Emperour gave the Duke of *Poland* the Title of King and Immunity, as their Annals inform us; this therefore is the beginning of that Kingdom. *Otho* returning out of *Italy* home, dyed in his Journey.

He was succeeded by *Henry* the Second, Duke of *Bavaria*, a Kinsman of *Otho* the Great, Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour. He having partly by extraordinary Lenity, partly by force of Arms suppreſt all Disturbances in *Germany*, and brought his Enemies to an Accommodation or Subjection, he passed into *Italy*, and there recovered the Province of *Apulia* from the *Saracens*. He was Crowned by *Benedict* the Eighth, and sending back his Army into *Germany*, went himself by the way of *Burgundy*, and *French County*, and there came to an Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, and confirmed the Peace with them. This Emperour was very much beloved by the Clergy, because he bestowed a great many Favours upon them.

After the Death of *Henry*, the Electors could not agree for some time in their Choice, but at last *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia*, was declared Emperour: He reduced *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, to Conditions of Peace, and having established all things in *Germany*, began a Progress for *Italy*, having Intelligence that the greatest part of that Country were enclined to a Revolt. And having first besieged *Milan*,

Milan, he paſſed on to *Rome*, and was there crowned by Pope *John* the Twenty Third, and ſaluted *Auguſtus* by the loud and joyful Acclammations of the People, and brought *Italy* to a Peace by puniſhing thoſe who had aimed at Innovations, and ſo returned to *Germany*, but was again recalled by new Commotions in *Italy*, where he puniſhed the Conſpirators, among whom was the Arch-Biſhop of *Milan*; nor did the Emperour deſiſt till he had ſubjected all to his Power. But having finiſhed theſe Affairs, and returned home to *Germany*, he dyed at *Utretch* in the *Low-Countries*.

His Son *Henry* the Third, by the conſent of the Electors ſucceeded him, who vanquiſhed the rebellious *Bohemians*, and made them Tributary; he ſeveral times reſtored *Peter*, King of *Hungary*, driven out of his Kingdom by his Subjects, and reduced that Nation to Peace, though not without the expence of a great many of his Souldiers.

There were now great Tumults at *Rome*, about the Popedom, for which no leſs than three contended, and ſpared no evil Art to obtain it, *viz. Benedict* the Ninth, *Sylveſter* the Third, and *Gregory* the Fourth; which made the Emperour march to *Rome*, which having taken by Siege, he called a Convention, and made *Suitgeus*, Biſhop of *Bamberg*, Pope, who changing his Name, was called *Clement* the Second, and then crowned the Emperour. Then again the People took an Oath

Oath to proceed wholly by the Emperour's Directions in chooſing the Popes. *Italy* being thus once again quieted, by that time the Emperour got into *Germany*, *Clement* dyed, and was buried at *Bambergh*: As ſoon as the Emperour heard of his Death, he made *Boppo*, Biſhop of *Friſinga*, Pope, under the Name of *Damaſus* the Second, who alſo dying Three and Twenty days after his Inſtallation, by *Henry*'s Command they choſe *Leo* the Ninth, Biſhop of *Tule* in the *Low-Countries*.

There is a Letter of this Pope extant, in which he ſays, a Biſhop, Prieſt, or Deacon ought not to deſert his Wife on the ſcore of Religion, but that he ought to allow her enough to live upon; but that it was not at all Lawful for him to have Carnal Kdowledge of her Perſon. When St. *Paul* ſays, that 'tis as Lawful for him, as the reſt of the Apoſtles, to lead about his Wife, he Interprets it, That the Wives of the Apoſtles were always with them, that they might be maintained by thoſe, to whom their Husbands preached the Goſpel, but not that they ſhould perform the Conjugal Duty with them, and lye with them; which was the Reaſon that St. *Paul* uſed the words lead about, and not embrace.

Pope *Leo* coming from *Rome* after the Year One Thouſand and Fifty, held a Council at *Mentz* of Forty Two Biſhops, in which the Emperour preſided: And dying three Years after, with the Approbation of the Emperour, *Gebehardus*, Biſhop of *Eiſtetenſis*, was choſen his

his Succeſſor, and was called *Victor* the Second. The Emperour paſſing for *Italy*, and having ſuppreſſed all Diſturbances there, returned for *Germany*, and having had an Interview with *Henry* the Firſt of *France*, dyed in *Saxony*, and was buried at *Spire*; the *Pope* and a great many Noblemen were preſent at his Death.

His Son *Henry* deſigned for the Empire, was very young, and therefore the Adminiſtration of Affairs were committed to his Mother, and the Biſhop of *Ausburgh*. And ſoon after him dyed *Victor* the Second, when he had been Pope a little above two Years. *Frederick*, of the Houſe of *Lorrain*, ſucceeded him, and was named *Stephen* the Ninth; but he dying at *Florence* a few Months after his Election, one *Benedict* the Tenth of that Name, with the Aſſiſtance of his Friends aſſumed the Papacy without the Approbation of the Emperour. But the *Romans* not at all approving the Attempt, ſent Ambaſſadors to the Emperour to clear themſelves of the Guilt, aſſuring him they would render the ſame deference to him they had to his Father, and therefore deſired he would chooſe them a Lawful Pope. Upon which the Emperour depoſed *Benedict*, and in his place put *Gerhardus*, Biſhop of *Florence*, who was *Nicholas* the Second.

The Nobles of *Germany* were very much diſſatisfied that the Empire ſhould be govern'd by a Woman, wherefore they conſidered how they might take the Son from the Mother: Which

Which when they had effected, the Publick Affairs were chiefly managed by the Arch-Biſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*. By theſe the Arch-Biſhop of *Bremen* was ſometimes admitted to the Prince, who was extreamly in his Grace in his Youth; and when at laſt he had monopolized his Favour, he diſpoſed of the Eccleſiaſtical Benefices to himſelf and his Friends, as he thought fit, principally Abbies; and the better to avoid the Publick Envy, he perſwaded the Emperour to beſtow the like Favours on other Noblemen.

In the mean while *Nicholas* the Second dyes, and the Emperour preferred in his place the Biſhop of *Parma*; but becauſe he had given no notice of it to the *Roman* Senate, which had like to have occaſioned a Mutiny, the Biſhop of *Lucca* was elected, by the Name of *Alexander* the Second. There was War betwixt theſe two Popes for ſome time, but at laſt *Alexander* had the better of it.

Whilſt the Arch-Biſhop of *Bremen* was chief Favourite of the Emperour, and ſoly adminiſtred Publick Affairs, he gave occaſion to the reſt of the Biſhops to be his Enemies, and was at laſt by them outed of his Preferments; and though he was again reſtored to his Place, yet he did not long out-live his Diſgrace; and the Emperour being forced by Neceſſity, the Complaints of the ſtate of the Empire being general, deſired the Arch-Biſhop of *Cologn* to take upon him the Adminiſtration of Affairs: But he ſeeing a great many unjuſt and inſolent things

things performed, resigned his Office, desiring his Age and Sickness might plead his Excuse.

After which the Emperor being then two and twenty Years old, being Naturally vicious, gave more way to his Lusts; and not loving his Wife before, kept a great many Mistresses: And building a great many Castles in *Saxony*, had a Design of bringing them into Slavery. Nor did he check the exorbitant Insolence of his Courtiers; which made the *Saxons*, both Noblemen and Bishops, take Arms in defence of their Liberties, which by much Entreaties, and satisfying all their Desires, he could scarce prevail with them to lay down, after he had very narrowly escaped by Night.

Alexander the Second being dead, the *Roman* Nobility chose *Hildebrand*, without consulting the Emperour, and he assumed the Name of *Gregory* the Seventh. Upon which *Henry*, by his Ambassadors, expostulates the case with them, and demands of the Pope that he give him satisfaction in the matter. He returned, That he was chose much against his inclinations and desires, but that he would not be Installed till the Emperour, and the rest of the Princes of *Germany* approved his Election. By this means he appeased the Emperour, and was by him confirmed in the Papacy.

After which he sent his Legates into *Germany* to some Bishops, letting them understand, that he would have them assemble in a *Synod*; but our Bishops refused it, because it was, as they urged, against the Custom and Priviledge of the

the Nation. Finding therefore his Endeavours there to no purpoſe, he held ſeveral Councils in *Italy*, in which he decreed that no Prieſt ſhould Marry, and that they who had Wives, ſhould either quit them, or their Benefice. He ſent this Decree into *Germany* to the Biſhops, and urged them abſolutely to eſtabliſh it, under ſuch a Penalty: But the Clergy violently oppoſed it, declaring, that he was no other than an Heretick that had advanced ſo Impious a Doctrine: Since *Chriſt* ſaid, *That all could not take that word*; and St. *Paul*, *That he that could not contain, ſhould Marry.* But that this Decree, ſuperſeding the word of Chriſt, and the Authority of St. *Paul*, would oblige Men to abſtain from the Lawful uſe of Matrimony, inſtituted by God, and be burnt with the impureſt Flames, and fall into manifeſt Wickedneſs, and that they would rather quit the Miniſtry of the Church, than their Wives.

But when the Pope by ſending new Meſſengers perſiſted in his Reſolutions, the Biſhop of *Mentz* thought of complying with him, and therefore mildly at firſt admoniſhed them to obey, but afterwards holding a Council at *Euphardia*, he openly ſhewed he reſolved to bring it about, but he had much ado to eſcape with his life for his pains.

In the mean while the Emperour, that he might Revenge the Infamy put upon him by the *Saxons* the laſt Year, in obliging him to fly for his ſafety in the Night-time, raiſing Forces,

Forces, breaks the Peace he had made the laſt Year, and with all the Power he could get together, in the Month of *July* falls upon the *Saxons*, who by often Embaſſies, deſired him to deſiſt, and in a bloody Battel overcomes them, tho' with the loſs of a great many of his ſide, and among them, not a few of the prime Nobility. After which Victory, he harraſs'd all the Country about, ſending Meſſengers in the mean while to them to ſurrender themſelves into his hands, aſſuring them they might hope all things from his Mercy: But this was to little purpoſe tho' ſome comply'd. The chief Managers of this *Saxon* War, was *Bucco*, Biſhop of *Holberſtein*, and *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, who had been beaten by the Emperor.

The Biſhop of *Mentz* being again ſollicited by Pope *Gregory* the Seventh, ſummon'd another Council, where he propos'd the *Celebacy* of the Clergy; but met with the ſame oppoſition as before, and eſcaped with no little danger of his life; which made him give over all thoughts of that affair.

The *Saxons* being thus beaten, the Emperor diſmiſs'd his Army, but on condition that they be ready again for Battel by the 22*d*. of *Octob.* following: Which day being come, a great many met, among which ſeveral Biſhops, but they amounted not to the number they were before. The *Saxons* being Encamp'd near *Northuſium*, ſent Ambaſſadors to the Emperor to deſire Peace; who return'd, That the

only Conditions of Peace were the ſurrendring of themſelves into his hands; tho' they were reſolv'd at firſt to run the extreameſt hazard rather than comply with, yet upon the Emperors ſending Perſons of ſuch great Quality to them, who aſſur'd them, they ſhou'd have nothing of their Liberties infring'd, nor their Goods and Poſſeſſions come to any damage; they at laſt ſubmitted themſelves to his Power, the Biſhops of *Mudeburgh* and *Halberſteen*, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Magnus* Duke of *Saxony*, and *Frederic* Prince Palatine, and after them a great number of other Noblemen. The Emperor at firſt put a Guard of ſome Quality over them, but afterward breaking his agreement, commanded them to be ſeperated, and carry'd into ſeveral places. 'Tis true, he afterward not only freed *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, but received him into great Favour; but for the reſt, he not only not ſet them at Liberty, but alſo diſpoſed of their Goods and Eſtates to be rifl'd by others, and then built more Caſtles and Gariſons in *Saxony*, which oppreſs'd the liberty of that Country, and kept them under his Yoke: and committed the adminiſtration of the whole Affair to the Duke of *Bavaria* in his Abſence, who drew his Original from *Saxony*.

He then appointed a Biſhop to the City of *Bamberga*, and that of *Cologn*, and an Abbot to *Fulda*.

The Pope had long had information againſt him, but chiefly becauſe he diſpoſed of the Eccel-

Eccleſiaſtical Benefices as he pleaſed. Wherefore the Pope by his Legate ſummons him to appear at *Rome* by a certain day, plead his own Cauſe, and anſwer to his Accuſation. But he on the other hand ſummons a Convention of Biſhops, and Abbots at *Worms*, where 'twas decreed, That becauſe the Pope had gain'd the Papacy by ſiniſter means he ſhould be depoſed; and this decree is publiſhed at *Rome* by Ambaſſadors. But the Pope not at all troubled at what they had done, Excommunicates both him and the Biſhops of *Mentz*, *Utrecht*, and *Bamberga*, after he had Excommunicated ſeveral of his Favorites and Courtiers, by whoſe Counſel he ſuppos'd he was put upon theſe things.

But ſome of the *German* Princes diſpleaſed at the Inclinations and Manners of the Emperor, but chiefly for his Indignation, with which, contrary to his Promiſe he perſecuted the *Saxons*, enter into a Conſpiracy againſt him, being chiefly encourag'd by the Excommunication he lay under: Wherefore they ſet at liberty the Priſoners committed to their charge by the Emperor, imagining now they ow'd him no Allegiance. At the ſame time a great many of the Nobility having ſtirred up the People to join with them, and took a bundance of the Caſtles built in *Saxony*, part by force and part by ſurrender, but diſmiſs the Gariſons unhurt, only exacting an Oath from them that they never ſhould act as Soldiers in *Saxony* after that time.

The Emperor being inform'd of this, by a cunning policy ſets the reſt of the Priſoners at liberty, that they might, returning into *Saxony*, do him faithful Service in puniſhing the Rebels. For he ſaw plainly, that he cou'd not by any other means obtain his end with ſo much eaſe, as if he made Factions among them, and deſtroy'd their Union, on which their ſtrength and ſafety depended. But the Meaſures he took anſwer'd not his Expectation; for they being return'd home, and ſatisfied in the Inclinations of the Emperor, they firmly united among themſelves, in a reſolution of Fighting for their common Liberty with one mind and one force: The ſame did Duke *Otho*, deſerting the Emperor. So that the Emperor had good hopes of being aſſiſted by the *Bohemians*, entred the County of *Miſenus*; but when he heard of the Concord of the *Saxons*, and that they were ready with an Army to receive him, deſpairing of ſucceſs he retreated without doing any thing.

After which, the *German* Princes meeting together in a very numerous Aſſembly on a day appointed, the Popes Legate having laid open the whole Cauſe before them, exhorted them to proceed to the Choice of another Emperor, which they had deſign'd to do if he had ſaid nothing of the matter. For reaping up all the Miſcarriages of the Life of the Emperor from his childhood to that day, they declar'd that he was the ſhame and ignominy of the Empire: And becauſe he

he had done great Damages to the Commonwealth they decreed he ſhould be depos'd. Who finding himſelf reduc'd to theſe ſtreights he began by his Ambaſſadors to implore and ſupplicate them. At laſt, after a long Negotiation on this matter, this Condition was propos'd; That he ſhould appear and ſubmit himſelf to the Judgment and Award of the Pope, whom they wou'd ſend for to be at *Ausburgh* by the firſt of *February*; that he ſhou'd implore Abſolution from the Excommunication, before the Anniverſary day of it came about; that unleſs he did this, the whole Treaty muſt fall to the ground: That he alſo diſmiſs his Forces, and that he live in a private manner, with a ſmall Family at *Spire*: That he ſhou'd perform no act of State, nor uſe any Ornament of Empire, 'till his Cauſe were lawfully decided. He accepts of the Conditions, and whilſt he was at *Spire*, he thought of going to *Italy*, the ſooner to reconcile himſelf to the Pope.

Having begun his Journey, with his Wife and little Son, through *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, in a very cold Winter, with no ſmall hardſhip, and danger of his life, he at laſt arriv'd in *Italy*, and was there receiv'd by the Nobility and Biſhops with a great deal of Joy and Honour, thinking he had come thither full of Indignation againſt the Pope; who in the mean time in complyance with the deſire of the *German* Princes, had begun his Journey, hearing of

the arrival of the Emperor *Henry* in *Italy*, made a halt, to underſtand the cauſe of it.

The Emperor ſends a ſplendid Embaſſy to the Pope, in which were ſeveral Ladies of Quality; and among them, one that had no ſmall intereſt in the Pope, and humbly deſires Abſolution. He at firſt anſwer'd very rigidly, and told them he could do nothing in the matter, unleſs his Accuſers had been preſent, but being after a great deal ado prevail'd upon, he granted his deſire.

But the Emperor before he was admitted into his Preſence, was oblig'd to wait in the Court and Poarch of the Popes Palace for three days, in a poor and humble dreſs, all his Imperial Ornaments being laid aſide, bare footed, and faſting till the Evening. The fourth day he gain'd admiſſion, and then the Pope propoſes theſe Conditions to him; That he ſtand to his Award, that he anſwers to the Accuſations that were to be made againſt him by the Princes, that being Convicted, he ſhou'd reſign the Empire, nor ever think or contrive Revenge: That in the mean time he ſhou'd live privately, and act nothing in a Publick capacity like a Prince; That he diſmiſs his Subjects of their Allegiance and Oath; That he remove his evil Counſellors and Favorites; which if he fail in any point of performing, that he ſhou'd have no Benefit of this Grace now intended him; and that the Princes ſhou'd be free to chooſe another Emperor. When he had approv'd of theſe hard Conditi-

ons

ons the Pope ſaid Maſs: And that he might clear himſelf of the Crimes laid to his charge, he took the Bread which they call the Body of the Lord, and receiv'd with great Imprecations on himſelf, if they were not all the invention of his Enemies: And then giving a piece of the ſame to the Emperor, deſir'd he would do the ſame if the Princes had falſly accus'd him; but when he excus'd himſelf as not ſufficiently prepar'd, the Pope urg'd it no farther; but inviting him to a Banquet, diſmiſt him with a great deal of Civility.

It being known to the Nobles of *Italy*, that he had in ſuch a mean and ſervile manner ſumbitted himſelf to him that had by ſuch ſiniſter ways uſurp'd the Papacy, and was polluted with Murders and Adulteries, they were extreamly diſguſted; for they not only contemn'd his Excommunication, and plac'd all their hope in him who was the Patron of Juſtice, and the Altar and Guardian of the Laws, but upon his account had been at great variance with the Pope. But now they look'd upon him as one that had given the moſt baſe and little-ſoul'd Example to all Poſterity, and fixt ſuch an indeleble Blot on the Empire, by ſeeking the Honour of one that was equally the Foe of the Church and State. This and ſuch like was their Diſcourſe upon this occaſion: And they had ſome thoughts of ſetting up the young Son of *Henry*, and of carrying him to *Rome*, and depoſing the Pope.

The Emperor underſtanding this, cou'd think of no way better to pacifie them, than by breaking his agreement with the Pope, and joyning himſelf with them: Which when he put in execution, he wholly diſappointed all the Deſigns of the Pope, and put a ſtop to his Journey into *Germany*.

But he did that which came neareſt to't, ſending an account of all that had happen'd to the Princes of *Germany*, and exhorted them to take care of the Common-wealth. This was in the Year 1077.

The Princes therefore choſe *Rodulphus* Duke of *Suevia* for Emperor, and the Biſhop of *Mentz* Crown'd him. But *Henry* returning into *Germany* raiſes an Army, and *Rodulph* does the ſame, who chiefly conſiſted in the Forces of *Saxony*; and after three Battels, being in the laſt mortally wounded, in a little time died.

After *Henry* had obtain'd this Victory, he had a Convention at *Brixia*, where both the *German* and *Italian* Biſhops that were met declar'd, that *Gregory* was not the lawful Biſhop of *Rome*. Wherefore in his place the Archbiſhop of *Ravenna* is ſubſtituted, who took the Name of *Victor* the Third: After this Decree *Henry* marches to *Rome*, and takes it, and *Gregory* making his eſcape, enter'd it, and confirms Pope *Victor*; who alſo Crowns him.

Gregory being dead, *Urban* the Second, the next Pope but one to him, in a Council held at *Cleremont*, in the Reign of *Philip* the Firſt

King

King of *France*, perſwades them to a War againſt the *Saracens*, the General of which War was *Godfrey* of *Bulloin*, who perform'd a great many Noble Actions; and at laſt recover'd *Jeruſalem*. *Paſchal* the Second, the Succeſſor of *Urban*, prov'd an Enemy to the Emperor; who on that account making a progreſs into *Italy*, deſign'd his Son for his Succeſſor. But he following the Inſtigation of others, and forgetful of that Duty which Nature imprints in the hearts of all Mankind, reduc'd his Father to the greateſt extreamities, and obliged him to abdicate the Government, having both the Pope and the greateſt part of the *German* Nobility on his ſide, for the perpetration of ſo impious a Fact; being therefore made Emperor, the Fifth of that Name: his Father in a great deal of Anger dy'd at *Liege*.

Some Years after he marched into *Italy*, with a very great Army, to compoſe the Differences that were riſen betwixt the Patrimony of the Church, and the State that belonged to the Empire; and having with his Sword cut out his way he came to *Rome*.

From the time of *Conſtantine* 'till then, the Emperors always diſpos'd of the Eccleſiaſtical Preferments; but now the Popes being enriched, wou'd not allow nor bear with it, but on that account had a great many Diſputes with them.

When this Emperor urg'd the Right of his Power, there was a great Tumult made in

Rome

Rome about it, insomuch, that the Emperor was waked out of his sleep in the Night to come to the Relief of his People, who were Murder'd in the Streets in great Quantities; but having worsted the Mutineers, he took *Paschal* the Second Prisoner; nor would set him at liberty till he had made him satisfaction; and then establishing a League with him dismist him. But when the Emperor was returned into *Germany*, the Pope thought fit to fall off from the Agreement which he had confirm'd with the most solemn and sacred Oaths, and Excommunicated the Emperor; which gave a Pretext to a great many of the *German* Princes to Rebel, among which the Bishop of *Mentz* was the chief.

The Emperor going into *Italy*, sends to the Pope about an accommodation, but in the midst of the Treaty the Pope dies, and was Succeeded by *Gelasius* the Second. But the Emperor being not consulted in the Election, comes to *Rome* and sets up another *Gelasius*, that was driven away, Excommunicates the Emperor and his Pope: And when the Legates of *Gelasius* endeavoured in *Germany* to cause a Revolt from the Emperor; and that the Princes had met for that Purpose, he was obliged to return into *Germany*. In the mean time *Gelasius* dying, the *Romans* Chose *Calixtus* the Second, who drove the Emperors Pope out of his place of Residence; and Negotiates with the Emperor about an Accommodation, by the Mediation of some others.

Lotharius

Lotharius the Third Succeeded *Henry*, who was of the Houſe of *Saxony*, who was oppos'd by *Conrade* Duke of *Suevia*, that was very angry that the Imperial Dignity was return'd to the *Saxons*. And Marching into *Italy*, to try by that means to gain the Empire, finding his Hopes diſappointed, returned into *Germany*, and made Peace with the Emperor *Lotharius*. At this time *Innocent* the Second was Pope of *Rome*, who was found to give way to *Anacletus*, who being Born of a great Family gain'd Intereſt enough to out him; but he applying himſelf to the Emperor, was by him Reſtor'd. *Lotharius* after this returns out of *Italy*, having ſettled all Affairs in *Germany*, with a very Powerful Army came thither again, and Subdued ſeveral Cities that Rebelled; among others *Aneova* and *Spoletum*. He drove *Roger* King of *Sicily* out of *Apulia* and *Campania*; and ſince the time of *Charles* the Great, there was none more Abſolute than this Emperor. In *Italy* this Emperors time too was recalled the Civil Law, which I have ſaid, was compacted by the Emperor *Juſtinian*, and had by the Fury of the Wars, for ſome time lain unregarded.

Conrade Duke of *Suevia* Succeeded him. In his time lived *Henry*, ſirnam'd the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, and of *Saxony*, by Marriage of the Emperor *Lotharius* his Daughter; who Aſpiring to the Empire, was Proſcrib'd, and his Eſtates and Poſſeſſions given to ſeveral others. But *Henry* having Recovered *Saxony*,

as

as he was Marching into *Bavaria* died, and left only one Son, in favour of whom the *Saxons* Rebel againſt the Emperor; and *Guelpho* Brother to the deceas'd Duke, by Arms forc'd *Rudolphus* out of *Bavaria*, to whom the Emperor had given that Province.

I have but now mentioned how the Emperor *Lotharius* diſpoſeſſed *Roger* King of *Sicily*, who, when he underſtood of theſe Tumults in *Germany*, having got this opportunity of effecting his Deſigns, Invaded *Sicily*, and removes the Governour for the Empire; and then by great Promiſes, encourages *Guelpho* to keep the Emperor imployed: The King of *Hungary* does the ſame, tho with ſome diſtruſt; having at laſt in an Expedition againſt the *Saracens* loſt his Army, he return'd home; and preparing all things for his Progreſs into *Italy*, he died at *Bambergh*.

Frederic Barbaroſſa, the Firſt of that Name, Duke of *Suevia*, his Brothers Son, a Man of a Great and Heroic Mind. In the beginning of his Reign he reduc'd the *German* Princes, and ended thoſe Differences and Diſtractions which were in *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, after which, with a great Army he Marched into *Italy*, puniſhes thoſe of *Verona* who had contemn'd him, hanging up ſome of the chief of them. Near *Placentia* he commanded all the Princes of *Italy* that were Fudatory to the Empire to make a Guard for him. He Beſieged *Milan*, and Levelled *Aſt*, and *Fortona*. Coming to *Rome* he's Crown'd by Pope *Adri-*

an

D. of Bohemia + made King

an the Fourth; Suppreſſes the Mutineering Citizens, he deſtroys *Spoletum*, and commits a great Slaughter. He Subues *Lombardy*, and having Beaten the Ambuſcade laid for him by thoſe of *Verona*, he returned to *Germany*; and puniſhes the Prince *Palatine*, who had ſtirred up Tumults in his Abſence, in an Ignominious manner. He made the Duke of *Bohemia* a King; In the mean while the *Milaneſe* commit many inſolent Actions againſt their Neighbours, and Retriev'd *Fortona*, which the Emperor had deſtroy'd. Wherefore returning with a great Army, he, by the help of thoſe of *Cremonia*, *Paria*, and *Noüarre* took *Milan*; and by the Interceſſion of the *German* Princes he ſpar'd the Multitude; and having reduced all *Lumbardy*, and given Laws to the City, he departed to other places thereabout.

After his Departure they Rebel, contemn the Laws he had given them, and demoliſhed the Gariſons he had left. Returning therefore thither again, he deſtroyed all the Country round about; thus it was with their Precinct, and all that belonged to them. In the mean while there were great Conſpiracies carried on againſt him in *Italy*; among the number of thoſe that Conſpired againſt him, was that Pope *Adrian* I have mentioned, who fully reſolved to Excommunicate him, but was prevented by Death. The Emperor returning a third time into *Italy*, totally deſtroyed and levelled *Milan* to the Ground, puts to Death the Authors of the Rebellion, and ſent the reſt

reſt of the Multitude into Exile: Beſieging *Rome*, he loſt great part of his Army by Contagion and Sickneſs. Upon which Raiſing the Siege, and placing Governours and Gariſons in *Spoletum*, *Ancona*, and *Ravenna*, returned into *Germany*.

Pope *Adrian* being dead, there were two that contended for the Papacy in the Abſence of the Emperor, *Victor*, and *Alexander* the Third: The Emperor inclin'd moſt to favour *Victor*, but *Alexander* Excommunicates his Competitor, and the Difference continuing, the Emperor too.

This Proceeding of the Pope furniſhed the *Milaneſe* with pretence and occaſion of Rebellion; and therefore in ſeveral places of *Italy* turn out the Emperors Governours, and even hang ſome of them up. This recalled *Frederick* for *Italy*, and with various Events purſues the War, in which the Pope being a confederate fled to *Venice*. After all, having brought all things to a Peace and Accommodation, he undertook an Expedition into *Aſia* againſt the Enemies of Chriſtianity, and was there Drowned by the Rapidity of the Coarſe of a River, into which he went for his Pleaſure.

His Son *Henry* the Sixth Succeeded him, who in his ſecond Expedition into *Italy*, *William* the Son of *Roger* King of *Sicily* being Dead, he ſubdued *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, took *Naples*, and reduc'd *Sicily* into his Power, leaving ſtrong Gariſons there to curb the Mutability of the People of that *Iſland*. After which he made

ſeveral

ſeveral Noblemen in *Ancona*, *Ravenna*, *Apulia* and *Hetruvia*. After which, having deſigned his Son *Federic* his Succeſſor by the conſent of the Electors, he paſſed into *Sicily*, and there died.

But by reaſon of the Infancy of *Frederic*, there moſt were for Advancing his Uncle *Philip* to the Throne; but Pope *Innocent* the Third oppoſed it with a great deal of Violence.

But the Princes being divided in their Choice, ſome being for *Philip*, others for *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*; they gave Riſe to great Commotions and Fights, the chief Seat of which was the Mouth of the *Rhine*. But *Philip* at laſt by Force and Inſinuation made all his Enemies ſubmit; after which he came to an Accommodation with the Pope; being ſenſible by Experience of the Violence of his Enmity: But being killed in his Chamber, *Otho* his former Competitor D. of *Saxony* ſucceeded him; who being Emperor incurr'd the Diſpleaſure of the Pope, who till then had been not a little his Friend, and was by him in Concluſion Excommunicated: Upon which the Princes (being Sollicited by the Pope to Chuſe another) Meeting, Elected *Frederic* the Son of *Henry* the Sixth King of *Sicily*, to whom they had given their Allegiance when he was yet an Infant, as I have already ſaid, and therefore ſent to him to come to them out of *Sicily*. The Emperor *Otho* with his Army meets him to oppoſe his Paſſage over the *Rhine*; but being worſted and depoſed, returned into *Saxony*, and there

as

as 'tis thought, died of Grief. Thus *Frederic* the Second, the Grandſon of *Frederic Barbaroſſa*, by his Son *Henry*, came to the Imperial Dignity.

Innocent the Third I have mentioned, held a Council at *Rome*, which is called the Council of *Lateran*; where among other things was Decreed, *That the Chriſm and Euchariſt, which they call the Hoſt, ſhould be kept under a Lock and Key. That every Year a Private Confeſſion of Sins ſhould be made. That Eccleſiaſtical Preferments beſtowed by the Civil Magiſtrate ſhould be void. That the Clergy ſhould not promiſe Fidelity to the Laws without good Ground. That the Orders and Decrees of Princes ſhould not be of Force to prejudice the Church. That the Clergy be free from all Contributions. That the Taxes be not Paid before the Tyths. That the Reliques of Saints be not ſhewed out of their Shrines or Caſes.* At this time alſo there were great Differences betwixt the *Greek* and the *Latin* Churches, and ſo great was the Odium betwixt them, that the *Greeks* would not uſe the Altars the *Latins* had ſaid Maſs upon, 'till they had Waſhed and Purified it, and Rebaptized thoſe of the *Latin* Church. There was therefore a Decree made, *That they ſhould return to the Boſom of their Mother-Church of* Rome; *that ſo they might be one Flock and one Sheppard. Upon their Diſobedience, that they ſhould be Excommunicated and Degraded.*

Frederic

Frederic coming to *Rome*, was Crowned by Pope *Honorius* the Third: He Suppreſſes all thoſe Rebellions which ſprung up in a great many places of *Italy*, and proſcrib'd ſome of the Rebels; ſome of which fly to *Rome*, and implore the help of the Pope; which gave Riſe to a great Diviſion; the Emperor highly reſenting that his Enemies ſhould find a place of Retreat, and ſafely there. The Difference encreaſing, he deſigns his Son his Succeſſor in the Empire, and Summons a Diet of the Princes to meet at *Cremona*, but their Paſſage thither was oppoſed by the Factions of the Pope and the *Lombards*; wherefore the Emperor returns into *Apulia*; and a little after the Pope dies: *Gregory* the Ninth Succeeds him, who Excommunicates *Frederic* for not going againſt the *Turk* according to his Oath.

The Emperor becomes a Supplicant, and endeavours to clear himſelf; but when that would do nothing, he Marched to *Rome*, and drove the Pope out; and then again Summoned the Princes to meet at *Ravenna*, but they were hindred by the many and powerful Factions ſtirred up againſt him by the Exil'd Pope.

His Wife being now Dead, the Emperor to make good his Promiſe, and to conſult the good of the Commonwealth, begins his Expedition into *Aſia*. In his Abſence the Pope makes a War and ſubdues *Apulia*.

The Emperor having met with Succeſs, and recovered a great many Places, and among the reſt *Jeruſalem*, and receiving Information of the Affairs of *Italy*, made a Truce with the Enemy for ten Years; and returns with his Army into *Italy*, and with no great Difficulty recovers what he had loſt in his Abſence. The Pope defending himſelf with a new Confederacy of the Nobles of *Italy*, who had been puniſhed for their Sedition by the Emperor, and then Excommunicates him for making a Truce with the Infidels. The Emperor too fond of Peace, ſends his Ambaſſadors to negotiate an Accommodation, which with much ado he obtains, and therefore retires into *Germany*. But the Pope unable to correct the Viciouſneſs of his own Nature, burnt *Viterbo*; again Excommunicates the Emperor, who being ſo highly provoked with a great deal of Indignation, returns into *Italy*, and puniſhes all the Rebels as he Marched through *Lombardy*, *Hetruvia*, *Umbria*, and the Mouth of the *Po*; upon which the Pope Repeals his Excommunication, and brings the *Venetians* into a Confederacy with him. The Emperor carrying all before him in *Italy*, and Reducing moſt part of it to its Duty, Marches to *Rome*, which he Beſieges; ſoon after *Gregory* dies, having Summoned his Faction to meet in a Council at *Ravenna*, whither they could not poſſibly come, all the Avenues being Guarded by the Emperor's Forces, which took ſeveral of them Priſoners.

This

This was he that Patch'd together the Decretal Epistles, as they call them, which is a great part of the *Pontifical Law*, loden with vast Commentaries; which makes me wonder, that there should be any Men who would take so much pains to spend their whole Lives & Studies to Illustrate those Writings with Comments, which are so absurd, false, & ridiculous in themselves, as if they had been hired to Defend the Errors and Follies of other Men, with the Expence of so much Trouble, and so many watchings to themselves, and lose the Reputation of their own Modesty in the Impudence of another. That which is called the *Gratian* Decree among other things has these.

That we must follow the Prescription of the Church of Rome, *which is the See of St.* Peter, *That no Council can lawfully Meet without the Permission of the Pope. That the Laws of the Church of* Rome *are as strictly to be observed, as if they were Pronounced by the Mouth of St.* Peter *himself: That which imposes the Yoke of the* Roman *Church, the Tollerable, is to be preferred. The Ministers of the Church ought to promise Chastity, that is, that they don't Marry. That it is lawful for him that has no Wife to have a Concubine. That tho' tis true, that a Remiss Pope prejudices himself as well as the rest of the World, yet he cannot be called to an account, since he's the Judge of all Men besides. That the Emperor ought to be subject to the Pope, and not the Pope to him. That all mortal Men are subject to the Judicature of Men,*

but the Pope only to that of God. That the Pope can diſcharge the People from their Oath of Allegiance to their Prince.

In the Decretals and Epiſtles of *Gregory*, and in the Sixth of *Boniface*, in thoſe of *Clement*, and thoſe they call the *Pragmaticks*, there is beſides other things,

That the Decrees of Councils are not above the Authority of the Pope. That it is the Right of the Pope, either to Confirm the Emperor Elect by his Approbation, or to Annul his Election by his Diſlike. That there are two great Lights which preſide over, and direct the World, the Sun and Moon; the Pope is the Sun, and the Emperor the Moon. That Adultery, and the leſſer Crimes are under the Direction and Management of the Biſhops. That the Pope is the only Umpire of the Priviledges of the Church. That the Bones of the Dead that lie under an Excommunication, ought to be dug up and caſt about unburied. That the Pope had Power to Depoſe Emperors. That the Emperor is to take an Oath of Fealty to the Pope. That the Clergy ought to be free from all Offices and Trouble. That a Man after his Death may be delcared an Heretick, and have his Goods Confiſcated. That the Sons of a Heretic ought not to be admitted to any Preferment, Eccleſiaſtical or Civil. That 'tis neceſſary to Salvation, that all Men be ſubject to the Biſhop of Rome.

By theſe few which I have taken out of a vaſt heap, any Man of Senſe may judge of the reſt.

A Law, as 'tis deſigned by the moſt Learned Men, *is that Reaſon in Nature, which commands thoſe things which are to be done, and forbids the contrary.* But a Law ought in any part to reſpect the common Intereſt and Good, and the Lawgiver ought to have the ſame Affection for the Multitude and a Commonwealth, as a Father has for his Children. But how theſe agree with this is evident; but to excuſe, palliate, and adorn ſuch ſtuff, and ſet it off with new falſity, and to ſay any thing, rather than to ſuffer the Dignity of them to be infringed, ſeems to me the greateſt effect of Impudence, to give it no worſe a Name: If Pride, Ambition, and Ignorance prevailed with them to make ſuch Decrees, if they differ in their Deciſſions, and ſome will not be bound by the Laws of others, who were of equal Power to themſelves; why ſhould you give your ſelf all this Fatigue to compoſe their Differences, and reconcile Contradictions.

That part of the *Pontifical Law*, which relates to Sale and Diſpoſal of Eccleſiaſtical Benefices and and Poſſeſſions, is a Sea, or more truly a Sink. For who is able to enumerate the Frauds and Crafts contained in them? not even they who have been many Years verſed in that ſort of Traffick, can never be skilled in all, ſince every Day gives birth to New. But this ſubject requires a Book to it ſelf, and having dwelt too long upon it here, I will return to my Buſineſs.

Not only the Emperor *Frederic*, but alſo *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, Marched into *Syria* and *Ægypt*, and afterward died at the Siege of *Tunis*, in the Year one Thouſand two Hundred and Seventy. In his Reign *William* Arch-Biſhop of *Paris* propoſed the Queſtion about the Eccleſiaſtical Benefices, and upon a publick Diſpute that Opinion prevailed, That it was not lawful for any Prieſt to have above one Benefice: but it is ſufficient to have repeated and mentioned ſuch Decrees.

Innocent the Fourth Succeeded *Gregory*, in the Pontificate, as well as Quarrel with the Emperor; for having called a Council at *Lions*, he Summons the Emperor to it, and upon his not obeying Excommunicates him, deprives him of the Imperial Dignity, and exhorts the *German* Princes to proceed to another Election: And this Decree of his, with ſeveral others, is in Print, as the Emperor's Letters to the ſeveral Princes of Chriſtendom, in which at large he proves the Injuſtice of the Pope, and his own Innocence. The Emperor deſigned to go to *Lions* and try his Fortune, but *Italy* again Rebelling, he turned his whole Force thither, but not meeting with very good Succeſs, retired into *Apulia*, and falling ill there, in ſome time after died. Some ſay he was Poyſoned, others that he was Srangled by his Baſtard-Son *Manfred*, who afterward Invaded *Italy*.

In this time flouriſhed that famous Civilian

Azo,

Azo, who was followed by all that vaſt Tribe of Writers, who Violating that hard and ſevere Edict of *Juſtinian*, ſtuffed the World with innumerable Volumes, in which we muſt now ſeek for what the Ancients wrote with ſo much Copiouſneſs and Learning, for there is no mean or end of Writing; the Labours of one ſerving to fill the Study of another, and as Writing is endleſs, ſo is variety of Queſtions; ſo that that ſaying of the Old Man that had conſulted three Lawyers on a Writ in Law is applicable here; *You have earned your Fee by increaſing my Doubts, ſince I am farther to ſeek than I was at firſt.* I ſay nothing of the Deceits which are every day found out, for it plainly happens here, as the Comedian ſays, *As my cunning, one Ill begets another.* *Cicero* complains, That tho' there are a great many Noble things contained in the Law, yet they are perverted by the deſigns of the Lawyers. But what would he ſay now if he were alive, and ſaw the vaſt Pyramids of Books, our Practice, and that Repoſitory of the Law ſo abominably Polluted and Defiled? But as it has pleaſed God to reſtore all other Arts and Sciences in our Ages, ſo he has moved a great many ingenious Men ſo well qualified and enabled by Learning, to apply themſelves to this with no contemptible Advantage, being a Study of great Excellence, and very neceſſary to the good of human ſociety, drawn from the higheſt Springs of Philoſophy, which theſe Men have reſtored to its ancient Light, and

Rodulph of Habsburg Emp.

primitive Equity; whose Endeavours indeed merit not only Praise but Reward.

After the Death of *Frederic*, there was an Interregnum almost twelve Years, when upon several Elections there were several Pretenders, none of which in the Hurry and Distraction of those times were Masters of the Extent of the Imperial Dignity.

In the mean while the Kingdom of *Naples*, and afterward that of *Sicily* fell from the Family of *Frederic*, into the hands of the King of *France*; for at that time the Popes depended on the Arms of *France*; tho' afterward there were sharp Disputes betwixt the Family of *Arragon*, and that of *Angiers* in *France*, about these places: but this has no relation to my present Subject.

After the Empire had thus long been harrassed by Factions and Divisions, *Rodulph* of *Habsburgh* was chose Emperor, who in the beginning of his Reign composed all those Troubles which were all over *Germany*; and then after having had several Conventions, he went against *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia*, who Rebelled against the Emperor, and reduces him to condition of Peace, which a little after, by the Perswasions of his Wife he broke, and was slain in *Austria*, in the second Battel against the Emperor: *Ladislaus Chunus* King of *Hungary*, assisted the Emperor in this War. And at last coming to a Peace, by a match, the Emperor gave his Son *Albert* the Dutchy of *Austria*, which had a great while before belonged to the King of *Bohemia*. Being detained

at

at home by the ſeveral Troubles of *Germany*, he went not at all into *Italy*, tho' he had no great Inclinations to go thither if he had been free from them: For 'tis reported, he uſed in a pleaſant Humor to repeat the Fable of the Fox, that refuſed to go viſit the Lion that diſſembled himſelf ſick in a certain Cave, becauſe he obſerved by their Footſteps, that none that entred ever came out again. However, he ſent a Governour thither, and afterward, as they ſay, confirmed the Donation of *Flaninia*, and the *Exarcate* to the Church of *Rome*, finding he had but very little profit from thence: For the Emperors being tired out with the continual Quarrels and Treacheries of the Popes, began at laſt to grow more remiſs and indifferent in their Affairs: For the Popes never reſted till they had got them clear out of *Italy*, which by the Arms of *France*, on which they depended, and the Biſhop of *Germany*, who nouriſhed Factions for them there, he accompliſhed their end.

And here we may call to mind how the face of things changed, when they who lived grew up and thrived, were made Rich and Powerful, and maintained in their State and Dignity, by the Beneſits and Gifts of the Emperors, uſurped the Supremacy over them, and robbed them of their Patrimony. For they poſſeſs not only great part of *Italy*, but alſo have bound the Kings of *Naples* and *Sicily* to them, for they pay him an Annual Tribute, and cannot accept of the Imperial Dignity, without the conſent of the Pope; and this among other

Adolphus of the house of Nassau Emp.

ther things they swear, when they are admitted to the Throne.

In the time of this *Rodulph* happened that famous Massacre of the *French* in *Sicily*; who being Masters of that Island, and by a Military liberty, did a great many insolent and extravagant Actions, there was a Conspiracy carried on against them, and when the Bells rung to Evening-Prayers they were all cut to Pieces through the whole Island; the *Sicilian* Vesper is become a Proverb. This hapned in the Year, one Thousand two Hundred and Eighty One, on *Easter Day*.

Rodulph in consideration of several Sums of Money, made a great many of the Cities of *Italy* free, which belonged to the Empire, *Bononia*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, *Lucca*, and others; having Summoned the Electors to meet at *Francford*, he could not obtain of them to chuse his Son *Albert* for his Successor.

After his Death, *Adulphus* of the House of *Nassau*, was chosen Emperor, who not long after had some difference with *Albert* Duke of *Austria*; but when he gave a general Disgust by his Behaviour to all the Princes of *Germany*, and even to the Bishop of *Mentz*, who was the cause of his Promotion to the Empire; he was deposed, and *Albert*, Son of the Emperor *Rodulph*, was elected in his place, who raising an Army, with the Auxiliaries of the Princes, Marched against *Adolphus*, and the Country of *Spire* coming to a Battel with him, in it he desperately wounded his Competitor,

Albert Empr. son of Frederick Barbarossa

pétitor, who was afterward killed by the Throng that preſſed on him.

After this Victory, *Albert* to prevent any Scruples about his former Election, deſired to be ſolemnly again choſe; which being done, Pope *Boniface* the Eighth declared againſt it, and would not allow of what the Princes had done. But a little after, having a great Quarrel with *Philip* the Fair King of *France*, he approved of the Election of *Albert*, and ſaid many fine things in the Praiſe of his Family. In ſhort, *Albert* was killed by ſome of his Court, when he had got all things in readineſs to go and force his Son *Frederic* upon the *Bohemians* for their King. This *Boniface* added another Volume, which he called the ſixth Book to the *Decretal Epiſtles* of *Gregory*, which were contained in five Books. Among other things he decreed, That it was lawful for a Pope to Abdicate the Papacy; for 'tis ſaid he had perſwaded his Predeceſſor *Celeſtine* the Fifth to do ſo.

Henry 7. of y. house of Lutzenburg Emp.r

After *Albert*, *Henry* the Seventh of the Houſe of *Lutzenburgh*, who having by Marriage made his Son *John* King of *Bohemia*, Marched into *Italy*, which was then in a wretched condition; for from the Death of *Frederic* the Second, *Italy* was neglected by our Emperors for Seven and Fifty Years; it was torn and harraſſed by thoſe that were the moſt Powerful of the ſeveral Factions, eſpecially by thoſe of the *Guelphs*, and the *Gibellines*; which two Factions were very Numerous and

power-

Powerful in that Country. First therefore he makes ſeveral Governours in the Towns and Cities, and the People take an Oath of Allegiance to him. Then ſtaying ſometime at *Milan*, endeavoured to no purpoſe to ſuppreſs thoſe Factions I have mentioned, and when *Turriano* Governour of that City, thought by Surprize to have deſtroyed the Emperors Party, the Deſign being diſcovered, he beat them out, and gave the Government of the City to the *Vicecomites*. All the Cities of that Country ſubmitted to his Power, only *Brixia* ſtood out, which after a long Siege he took, and diſmantled. From whence, paſſing through *Genoua* to *Piſa*, and thence to *Rome*, he was there Crowned by ſome Cardinals, the Pope having left the City, and reſided then at *Avignion* in *France*: But when the Cardinals required the Oath of him, which they alledged he ought to take to the Pope, he refuſed it, denying to be Bound to him by any ſuch Obligation; which made the Pope, for the encreaſe of his Authority, afterward make a large Explication of that general Form of the Oath, which he Inſerted in the Decretals, which are yet extant; for he alſo compoſed ſeveral Laws, which from his Name are all called *Clementine*.

At this time the Knights Templars, who had vaſt Riches and Poſſeſſions, were cut to Pieces in ſeveral places at the ſame time, and their whole Order extinguiſhed. *Philip* the Fair King of *France*, by the permiſſion of the Pope

Pope, seized great part of their Wealth; their Name and Memory was afterward in the Council of *Vienna* condemned, and their Possessions given to the Knights of *Rhodes*. At this time too, by the Authority of Pope *Clement*, the University of *Orleans* was Founded.

Henry at last being dead, not without great suspicion of Poyson, was buried at *Pisa*; and after his Death, great Divisions arose in *Germany* about the Election; for *Frederic* Duke of *Austria*, the Son of the Emperor *Albert*, and *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, contended for the Empire; the Bishop of *Mentz* Crowned *Lewis* at *Aix*, and the Bishop of *Cologn* Crowns *Frederick* at *Rome*. But Pope *John* the Twelfth gave them both the Title of Emperor, tho' he inclined more to *Frederic*, which increased the Fewd, mutually levying Armies, they came to a Fight near *Smina* a City of *Suevia*, with equal Success; but coming to another Battel in *Bavaria*, with the loss of a great part of his Army, *Frederic* was taken Prisoner, but being in a little while after set at Liberty, he retired home, and there within a few years died.

Lewis being now freed from his Rival in the Empire, with a great Army Marches into *Italy*, much against the Inclinations of the Pope, puts Governours into a great many Towns and Cities, and is Crowned at *Milan*, by the Arch-Bishop of that place; he sends Legates to *Avignion* to the Pope, to be Crown-

ed

ed in a more ſolemn manner; but not being able to obtain it, having ſettled Affairs in *Milan*, he Marches to *Rome*; where being received with a great deal of Joy, he is again Crowned by two Cardinals: And when the Pope redoubled his Excommunications againſt him by the Advice of his Nobles, he ſets up another Pope, which widned the Breach betwixt them, and made the Fewd encreaſe to the greateſt extremity, bitter Recriminations paſſing betwixt them.

The Annals of *France* ſay, that *Charles* the Fair, Son of *Philip*, was the firſt King that granted the Pope the Tenths of the Eccleſiaſtical Benefices in *France*, and that they divided the Spoil betwixt them; that the chief Motive of the Popes perſwading the King to it, was becauſe he wanted Money to manage his Affairs againſt the Emperor.

Lewis being returned into *Germany* the Pope died, and *Benedict* the Twefth Succeeded him, who Excommunicated the Emperor, and deprived him of his Dignity. Wherefore Summoning a Diet of the Princes at *Francfort*, in a very learned Speech, the Emperor complains of the Injuries offered him by the Pope; he explains to them the Nature of his Truſt, and produces the Ancient Laws of the Empire, and explains them, and ſhews how little Right the Pope has to meddle with State and Government of the Empire: For he that by the Election of the Princes is Choſen, is Emperor without the Aſſent, Conſent, and Coronation of

Charles K. of Bohemia, 1st son of John, & Grandson of Henry. 7. Empl.

of the Popes; all which was no more than a meer Ceremony, which by degrees crept in, and was now ſtretched to too unreaſonable latitude, and that to the great Shame and Detriment of the Empire.

Pope *Benedict* dying, *Clement* the Sixth Succeeded him, who was the moſt violent of all, and propoſed the moſt Infamous Conditions imaginable, which being refuſed, he grew more enraged, and admoniſhed the Princes with a great deal of Authority to proceed to a new Election, and ſets them a certain time to do it in, threatning them if they diſobeyed, that he would provide another Patron and Defender of the Church. *Lewis* dying in the midſt of this fluctuating Condition of the Common-Wealth, and *Charles* King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *John*, and Grandſon of *Henry* the Seventh is Choſen.

A little before this time, there hapned this cauſe of War between *France* and *England*, *Charles* the Fair King of *France* dying without any Sons, in the Year of the Lord, 1327. *Edward* the Third King of *England*, being the Son of *Iſabella*, Siſter to *Charles*, pretended to the Crown of *France*: But the Peers of *France* give the Crown to *Philip* of *Valois*, Couſin German to *Charles*, not only excluding *Edward*, but alſo the younger Daughter of the King, who was born after his Deceaſe, pretending that the Daughters had no Right of Inheritance in that Country; this gave Riſe to a great War, which is ſcarce yet forgot.

Charles

Charles the Fourth met with ſome oppoſition in the beginning of his Reign, for the Empire was offered to *Edward* King of *England*, who they ſay refuſed it, being taken up with his War againſt *France*. But after he had ſuppreſt various Troubles in *Germany*, he at laſt paſt into *Italy*, and by the conſent of the Pope, was Crowned in *Rome* by ſome Cardinals, the Pope being ſtill at *Avignia*; but on this condition, that he ſhould immediately upon it leave *Italy*: Returning therefore to *Milan*, he granted the perpetual Government of *Lombardy* for the Empire, to the Family of the *Viſcounts*, who was of great Power in that City: For which Favour he received a very great Sum of Money from that People, and more from other places, on which he beſtowed ſome immunities; which very much contributed to the weakning the Intereſt and Power of the Empire in thoſe Parts.

After his return from *Italy*, he held a Diet of the Princes, where he paſſed that Decree which is commonly called the *Golden Bull*; having at laſt with great Bribes, as 'tis written, procured his Son *Wenceſlaus* to be Choſen his Succeſſor, he died in a little time after.

In his Reign, *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip* of *Valois* at *Poictier*, with his youngeſt Son *Philip*, afterward Duke of *Burgundy*, and Sirnamed the Hardy, and Bold, was taken by the *Engliſh*, who were Maſters then of great part of *Aquitain*, and the City of *Burdeaux*. In this Battel a great many of the Nobility were

were slain. The Annals report, that the *Englisſh* were not above 7000 at this Battel, whereas the *French* were about 60000 strong: This Battel was fought in the year of Christ, 1356. on the 20*th* of *September*. The King being carried Prisoner into *England*, seven years after died there.

Wenceslaus being by Nature, Education and Custom, extreamly Vicious, had little regard to the Common-Wealth; he made *John Galeus*, a Man of great Cruelty and Covetousness, Duke of *Milan* and *Lombardy*, in consideration of the Money he sent him.

In his Reign *Jugello* Duke of *Lithuania*, by the Choice of the Nobles of *Poland*, was made King of that Country, after the Death of King *Lewis*, the Great Grandfather of *Sigismond* the Second now Reigning, who being at last Baptized, received the Name of *Uladislaus*. On the 29*th*. of *September*, *Sigismond* King of *Hungary* was beaten, near *Nicopolis*, by *Bajazet* Emperor of the *Turks*. *Charles* the Sixth King of *France*, had sent a Noble Body of Horse to the assistance of the King of *Hungary*, under the Command of *John*, Son of *Philip* the Bold, Duke of *Burgundy*: *John* being taken and carried before the Grand Signior, was in great danger of losing his Life, tho' he at last came off safe. The Authors of the *French* Annals give this account of the manner of it; There was in the retinue of *Bajazet*, a Physiognomist, a Favorite of the *Turks*, who was one of those that pretended to know the

Natures and Inclinations of Men, by their Face, Eyes, Body, and Countenance; he perſwaded the Emperor to ſet him at liberty, becauſe he would kindle ſuch a Fire, that Europe, and the greateſt part of the Chriſtian World ſhould burn with it; being perſwaded by this, he ſet Prince *John* at liberty, as he did the reſt of the Nobility, when they had paid him their Ranſom, which amounted to 200000 Crowns of Gold. After his return into *France*, he began a Quarrel with *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, the Kings Brother, who in the Kings ſickneſs, being his neareſt Relation, aſſumed the Adminiſtration of Affairs, which were in a very bad condition. But *John* now by the Death of his Father, being Duke of *Burgundy*, pretended as the Kings Couſin German, and pleading the precedence of Age, the Adminiſtration belonged to him. Theſe Animoſities and Diſputes encreaſing, the Duke of *Orleans* was Murdred at *Paris*, returning in the night time home from Supper; theſe Ruffains were ſent by the Duke of *Burgundy*, as he did not deny, but defended the Fact; this was done in the year of Chriſt, 1407. on the 23*d* of *November*. Twelve years after this, when the Duke of *Burgundy* met at a place appointed to come to an Accommodation, he was perfidiouſly ſlain in the Preſence of *Charles* the *Dolphin*, who was to be Umpire of the Diſpute, by ſome of the Friends of the Duke of *Orleans*, who had entred into a Conſpiracy againſt him; this was the Seed of the Wars, which

Rob. Palatine & D. of Bavaria Emp.

which every now and then broke out betwixt those two Families, even to this Age.

Wenceslaus being contemned by the Princes for his supinity and neglect of the Government was deposed by them, and *Robert* the *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, Chose in his place; who immediately applied himself to redress the Ills *Wenceslaus* had brought upon the Common-Wealth, and had not much regard to the Grant made by him to *John Galeus*, but designed to endeavour to recover *Lombardy* to the Dominion of the Empire; upon this and some other accounts, endeavouring to pass into *Italy*, he was beaten back by *Galeus*. The State of *Italy* was then in a very troubled condition, by the too great Liberties granted it by the Emperor *Wenceslaus*; for besides *Galeus*, who was made Duke of *Milan* by that Emperor, the *Venetians*, the *Genoese*, and the *Floerntines*, were all in Arms, and the Sword was the only Umpire of Right and Wrong. Then the continual absence of the Pope there, gave Rise to Troubles of a very dangerous Consequence in *Rome*. *Galeus* makes War against the *Florentines*, upon which they, to revenge themselves, send to invite the Emperor again into *Italy*, with large Promises; and when the Emperor was come to *Petavia*, by the permission of the *Venetians*, who hated *Galeas* too, and finding the *Florentines* fall far short of their Promises, returned again into *Germany*, laying aside all thoughts of *Italy*, which afterward by civil Discords was far more weakned.

Sigismond, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, the Brother of *Wenceslaus*, Succeeded *Robert*; at this time there were three Popes, *John* XIII, *Gregory* XII, and *Benedict* XIII; so that all Europe almost was divided in these three Factions; for from 200 Years, from the time of *Innocent* III, there had been no general Council; so that the State of the Clergy was in a very corrupt condition, when having drank so large and long a Draught of Vice, it could scarce bear any Medicinal Purgation.

For in this time there had been *Boniface* VIII, who arrogated an Imperial and Papal Authority at once; the next but one to him, *Clement* V, by the desire of *Philip* the Fair, translated the Court from *Rome* to *France*; after whose Death, by the disagreement of the Cardinals there was an *Interegnum* in the Papacy for some Years, and at last, Pope *John* the XII, was Chose at *Lions*. The fifth Pope after this, *Gregory* the XI, when the Court of *Rome* had resided in *France* for 71 Years, returned to *Rome*: But after his Death *Urban* VI, a *Neopolitan*, and *Clement* VI, of *Savoy*, contended for the Papacy; the first depending on the Forces of *Italy*, and the last on those of *France*; the first had his Residence at *Rome*, the other at *Avignion*; these two being dead, these three Succeeded to their Divisions and Pretences; and there was now three Popes.

There were several learned and great Men, both of *France* and *Italy*, that deplored the sad State of the Church, and having as much Light

Albert K. of Hungary & Bohemia, Emp.

Light as that Night would afford, with a great deal of Severity lashed the corrupt and profligate Names of that Age. Among these was *Petrarch*, who when the Pope and Cardinals resided at *Avignion*, called that place the Whore of *Babylon*; for the composing of this Schism in the Papacy, there is a Council held at *Constans* in *Germany*, where all these three Pretenders were deposed, and *Martin* the V Chosen. In this Council *John Huß*, and *Hierom* of *Prague* were Burnt, altho' they came thither upon the Publick Faith of the Emperor.

The Emperor *Sigismond* is much celebrated, because for the good of the Common-Wealth of Christendome, he went to all the Christian Kings, to perswade them to consult the common Good. Having thus composed all things in *Germany*, he Marched into *Italy*, where then the *Venetians* and *Florentines* were at War with *Philip Maria*, the Son of *John Galeas*, Duke of *Milan*; being come to *Rome*, he was Crowned by Pope *Eugenius* IV, from whence he returned to *Basle*, where there was then another Council.

This Emperor was succeeded by *Albert* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, who being busied at home with Civil and *Turkish* Wars, went not at all into *Italy*.

About this time arose several Ingenious Men, who began again to receive the Arts and Sciences, and the Skill in the Tongues, first in *Italy*, where they were assisted by the Study of the *Greek* Authors; but afterward Learning

ſpread itſelf through *France*, *Germany*, and other Nations; and 'tis almoſt incredible what a Progreſs it made when the Art of Printing was found out.

But at this time Learning is come to that Perfection, by the continual Study of Ingenious Men from that Age to this, that we may compare the preſent Age with the moſt Learned of Antiquity; but that which has encreaſed its happineſs, is that it has pleaſed God to add the Knowledge of himſelf to this of the Arts and Sciences, whereas thoſe Learned and Eloquent Men of Antiquity with all their advantage of Learning, were buried in a profound Darkneſs as to that Particular, and ſearched in vain for that *Summum bonum* they wrote ſo much about.

Frederic III. Duke of *Auſtria*, Succeeded *Albert*, who went to *Rome* in a peaceable manner, and was Crowned by Pope *Nicholas* V. and returned into *Germany*, without attempting any thing in *Italy*.

In the fourth Year of his Reign, *Uladiſlaus*, the Son of *Ukadiſlaus* King of *Poland* and *Hungary*, breaking the Truce made with the *Turk* by the Inſtigation of Pope *Eugenius*, being routed by *Amurath* II. died on the 11*th* of *November*.

Nine years after, *Mahomet* the Son of *Amurath* took *Conſtantinople*, whoſe Heirs keep it till this day, 103 years, making it the Seat of Empire.

Caſimius, Brother to *Uladiſlaus*, Succeeded him

him in *Poland*, and *Ladiſlaus*, youngeſt Son of the Emperor *Albert* in *Hungary*; *Maximilian*, the Son of *Frederic*, Succeeded him. Soon after the Death of *Frederic*, *Ferdinand* King of *Spain* drove the *Barbarians* out of the Province of *Pretica*, commonly called the Kingdom of *Granada*, and joyned that to his Dominions. Among a great many Tranſactions of the Emperor *Maximilian*, he made War with the *Venetians*; his Grandſon *Charles* V. the preſent Emperor Succeeded *Maximilian*.

From what I have ſaid, we may ſee how that Great and Auguſt Empire of *Rome*, whoſe Power never was, nor never will be equalled, ſunk from all its Grandure, and was wholly torn to pieces and diſſipated; For in *Aſia* we have not the leaſt Footing, the *Turks*, the *Scythians*, and other Nations, Enemies of our Religion, are entirely Maſters of that: *Africa* too, was entirely loſt, till ſome few Years ſince. *Charles* V. took *Tunis* from *Barbaroſſa*, the Admiral of the Port, and after a glorious Victory obtained, eſtabliſhed a King there, whom he made Tributary to the Empire, and 15 Years after won the City of *Africa* by Storm.

Charly 5. Emp.

Portugal, *Spain*, *France*, *Britany*, *Denmark*, *Sarmatia*, *Panonia*, *Illyria*, all *Greece*, and the neighbouring Nations to it, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, the *Balearean* Iſlands, the *Allobroges* or *Dauphine*, are all ſeperated from it, each of which Provinces having now its ſeveral Lord, of an abſolute and independant Power, as to the Empire, to which they have not the leaſt Deference.

But now let us take a View of *Italy*, that Ancient, Original, and Patrimonial Inheritance of the *Roman* Empire, and what ſhall we find at this day belonging to it? *Calabria*, *Apulia*, *Campania*, and *Naples*, the Kings of *Spain* hold by Succeſſion. The City of *Rome*, the Seat and Palace of the Emperors, *Romania* and *Vincentia*, and part of *Hetruvia*, are poſſeſſed by the Popes, who are ſo far from acknowledging Obedience to the Empire, that they hold both the Emperor and his Governours in a kind of ſubjection to them; what other Cities there are of Note in thoſe Parts, either have ſeveral Princes of their own, or are Ruled by Factions, none of them having the leaſt dependance on the Empire: Then the *Venetians* a free Government, abſolutely independent of the *Roman* Empire, at this day Poſſeſſes not only a great many Towns and Cities, but alſo large Provinces and Countries.

'Tis true, we have ſome better Pretences at preſent to *Lombardy*, tho' even that be in a very wavouring State, affording the Empire no certain Advantage; for after our Emperors had, as I have ſaid, firſt made Viſcounts there, and then Dukes, into what wretched Diſtractions has it fallen, and how little Intereſt have we had in it? for after the Viſcounts and Dukes, by civil Broils were caſt out, the Family of *Storſias* obtained the Government of it, till *Lewis* XII. and *Francis* I. outed them, and kept the Poſſeſſion of it, till *Charles* V. reſtored it to the Empire.

Our Empire therefore has no advantage from *Italy*

Italy, for they are neither preſent at our Councils, nor contribute any Taxes to publick Uſes or Neceſſities, unleſs what they pleaſe as their own free Gift, or for love of any particular Emperor.

Germany only remaining, which was always of old ſtubborn and averſe to the *Roman* Yoke, and often Rebelling, as I have ſhewed before, which *Charles the Great* reduced into one Body, and the Choice of the Emperors being Eſtabliſhed in the ſeven Electors, was made the Seat and Reſidence of the Emperors. But we muſt farther conſider with how much difficulty, even this ſmall particle of the Empire in *Germany*, was kept from falling aſunder, for how many Diviſions, Animoſities, and Civil Wars have we groaned under.

All that therefore which we now call the Empire, is contained within the narrow Bounds of *Germany*, without which there is nothing belongs to it: Nay, even within this ſmall extent, we may obſerve how many draw from the Body, and every day endeavour each to make his own Dominions as little dependant on the Empire as they can. Then to ſay nothing of the Attempts of the Neighbouring Kings and States, how do they continually tug and diſmember this lean Carcaſs of Empire, each endeavouring to appropriate that to himſelf, which belonged to the Publick.

But at laſt, to draw toward an End, let us apply, in a few words, what the Prophet *Daniel* has foretold of theſe Tranſactions and Viciſſitudes. I have mentioned the Statue which *Nebucho-*

buchodonoſor ſaw in his Dream, which I will treat upon by and by; and now examine ſome other places of that Prophet.

In the *7th* Chap. he deſcribes four Animals, which he ſaw aſcend out of the Sea, a *Lion*, a *Bear*, and a *Panther*, the laſt he ſays was of a terrible and horrid Form to behold; the *Lion* ſignified the *Aſſyrian* Monarchy, the two Wings which that Beaſt had, expreſſed the two Members or Parts of that Empire, *Babylon* and *Aſſyria*.

The *Bear* Denoted the *Perſian* Monarchy, which ſubdued that of *Babylon*; the three Ribs between his Teeth, were the three chief Kings of that Monarchy, *Cyrus*, *Darius*, and *Artaxerxes*, who were more martial Men than the reſt, and devoured a great deal of Fleſh, as the Scripture words it, that is, ſubjected a great many Nations to their Empire. The *Panther* was the Monarch yof *Alexander* the Great, the four Wings & Heads, were the four Kingdoms, which ſprung up out of that Monarchy after the Death of *Alexander*. The fourth and laſt Annimal was the *Roman* Empire, the ten Horns are the parts of it, as *Syria*, *Egypt*, *Aſia*, *Greece*, *Africa*, *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, and *Germany*, for all theſe were ſubject to the *Romans*; that little Horn which came up among the ten, before whom *three of the firſt horns were plucked away*, denotes the *Mahometan* or *Turkiſh* Monarchy, which ſubdued three of the chief parts of the *Roman* Empire, *Egypt*, *Aſia*, and *Greece*; in this little Horn were Eyes, and a Mouth ſpeaking preſumptuous things; *Mahomet* propoſed a new Doctrine very grateful to his followers, and which carried ſome face of Reaſon;

Reaſon; which are theſe Eyes, but in reality preſumptuous againſt God; for it plainly deſtroys the Writings of the Prophets and Apoſtles, and acknowledges no benefit of Chriſt, but abuſes all the whole Doctrine of our bleſſed Saviour.

Farther, this little Horn makes War upon the Saints, and ſhall afflict them (ſays he) till the Ancient of Days, who has no Beginning nor End, ſhall do Judgment; whence 'tis apparent, that with this *Turkiſh* Empire the World ſhall have an end, nor ſhall be any after it, but that eternal and never-fading Kingdom of Chriſt, ſhall begin all thoſe of the Kings and Princes of the World being extinguiſhed.

In the 8*th*. Chap. *Daniel* deſcribes a *Ram* and a *Goat*, which the Angel himſelf afterwards interprets very plainly, telling him that the *Ram* with two Horns was the double Kingdom of the *Meads* and *Perſians*; that the *Goat* ſignified the *Grecian* Empire, & that the great Horn in his Forehead the firſt King of it, that the four Horns that ſucceeded the great Horn that was broke, meant four Kingdoms that ſhould be formed out of that Monarchy, but that they ſhould not be at all comparable to the firſt in Power and Force.

Let us therefore conſider with how much propriety and certainty *Daniel* drew *Alexander* the Great above two Hundred years before his Reign. He ſaid that the Goat ſhould not touch the ground, that is, that he ſhould finiſh his Conqueſts with the greateſt celerity; and that none wou'd deliver the Ram from his force.

force. For *Alexander* Reigned but Twelve years, and in that ſhort time ſubdu'd almoſt all *Aſia*, as I have ſhew'd in this Hiſtory. And although the power of the *Medes* and *Perſians* was of a prodigious greatneſs, yet *Darius* was beaten in three ſucceſſive Battles, and left both his Life, and his Empire. Some Authors ſay, that when he came to *Hieruſalem*, that the High Prieſt read this place of *Daniel* to him, at which he was not a little pleaſed.

Then, that another horn ſhould come out of thoſe four, a little one in the beginning, but afterward very great and powerful, which ſhou'd very much afflict the moſt holy places, he ſays, by this is fore-told, the moſt bitter perſecution which the Jews were to ſuffer from the Succeſſors of *Alexander* the Great, the Kings of *Ægypt* and *Syria*, betwixt which Kingdoms *Judea* lyes; for that Horn which roſe up out of the other four, the Jews experienc'd in *Antiochus Epiphanes*, King of *Syria*, a moſt cruel Perſecutor of the Jews.

To this alſo we may apply the Eleventh Chapter, which diſcourſes of *Alexander* the Great, and his Succeſſors, with that perſpicuity alſo and copiouſneſs, as if it were a Hiſtory of his Life, and not a Propheſie of him. Laſtly, let us come to the Statue of *Nabuchodonoſor*, of which I have already curſorily ſpoken. I ſhall not repeat the interpretation of it, that relates to the three firſt Monarchies, becauſe that is very plain and fulfill'd. I'll only take notice of the fourth, which has a near relation to us, who live in the time of that, and which is more at large

large deſcribed by *Daniel*. He ſays, it ſhall be an *Iron Monarchy*, which ſhall break and ſubject all Kingdoms to itſelf, to make which evident, requires not many words, the thing itſelf is evident, and the ſeries of the Hiſtory I have been writing, makes it out beyond controverſie.

But *it's Feet and Toes were partly Iron, and partly Clay*. As the Feet of a Humane Body is divided into Toes, ſo the *Roman Empire* after it had ſupported itſelf firmly on Iron Legs for ſome time, ſhould at laſt end in Toes, and the vaſt weight of that Body ſhould be diſſolv'd. This alſo is evident is come to paſs, nor does it need a Comment to explain it, for what can be more ſeparated, than the body of that Noble Empire is at this day.

But notwithſtanding this, yet the ſole of the Foot being Iron, as the Prophet ſays, the eſtabliſhment of it ſhall remain, nor ſhall it be entirely deſtroy'd, but the Name and Dignity of it ſhall remain till Chriſt comes, and puts an end to all Humane Things. But there is nothing more evident, no not the Sun at Noon, than that it is now reduc'd to the ſmalleſt and moſt ſlender pittance imaginable.

That lofty Tree is faln, but the roots remain faſt ſtuck in the ground, but not full of Sap that it may again ſprout out, and once more encreaſe, but a dry and liveleſs trunk. But no humane force ſhall be able to pluck up this Iron Root entirely, but it ſhall continue fixt in the earth, the whole Frame and Machine being diſſolv'd.

And of this we have had experience, for a great

great many have endeavoured to destroy these small reliques of the possessions of the Empire. First the Popes, and after them the Turks, who though they have made a very considerable progress, yet they will never arrive to that grandeur to be able to compare with the *Roman* Empire, nor shall they be able to overturn this small trunk of Empire that remains, tho' it be fading and sapless, for there can be no Fifth Monarchy.

Germany alone has the name of Empire, which if it wou'd unite its Forces and Minds, is able, as may be prov'd by example, to oppose all forreign force and invasion.

A few years since the *Turks* passing the *Thracian Bosphorus*, spread themselves a great way over *Europe*; the Bounds of their Empire, and that of *Germany* now joyn, which by its vicinity to such an Enemy, seems to be in no small danger, as well as *Italy*. But if we take a nearer view of the Prophet *Daniel*, we have some cause to hope that their power is now at its height. For *Daniel*, as I have observ'd, gives them but three Horns, which they now possess, they at first became Masters of *Asia*, and afterward of *Ægypt*, and *Greece*; and under the name of *Greece* we may comprehend all those Countries as far as *Illyria*. And tho' they at present are Masters of *Hungary*, and may perhaps Conquer *Germany*, or other Neighbouring Nations, yet since their Dominions shall be confin'd within certain Bounds, and shall not at all parallel that of the *Romans*, as I have made it appear; 'tis probable that these Countreys

shall

ſhall not fall into their poſſeſſion, as thoſe three, *Aſia*, *Egypt*, and *Greece* are.

They ſhall make War with the Saints, and harraſs the Profeſſors of the Chriſtian Religion, with the greateſt cruelty and barbarity, even to the end of the world, as *Daniel* aſſures us.

The principle cauſe of this Prophecy was, that we ſhould not deſpond and be out of heart being forewarn'd of the Diſtractions and Miſery of theſe latter times, but expect our deliverance from the coming of Chriſt our Lord and Redeemer, who ſhall ſoon diſperſe theſe afflictions, as the Prophet ſays, and raiſe up his people, and tranſport them into a ſtate of certainty and tranquillity, wiping the tears from their eyes.

Some places of *Daniel* properly belong to the *Jews*, to whom are promiſed a Deliverance from their Captivity, and that the *Meſſias* which was promis'd their Fathers, ſhou'd come in a certain and appointed time there ſet down; but all the reſt relates to all thoſe of the latter ages of the World, when that little Horn of *Mahomet* ſhall make War on the Saints, and when that man of Sin ſhall be caſt out, who ſeats himſelf in the Temple of the Lord, and boaſts himſelf for a God; for *Daniel* foretold his Tyranny too, as St. *Paul* elegantly in his Epiſtles interprets him.

Satan, whom Chriſt calls *The Prince of this World*, who has rul'd in the world all along, ſhall then be more violent and troubleſome than ever, and ſhall give a looſe to all his fury

and

and indignation, and shall stir up Adversaries against Christ, not only such as shall with force of Arms tyrannize, but also such as shall by New Doctrines mislead Men into Errors, so that the very Elect shall scarce be able to avoid their snares.

This is the time which was meant by *Daniel*, in his Twelfth Chapter, so over-run with Miseries and Calamities, that there never was, nor ever will be the like again. He promises us no Joy, but severe Persecutions, which Calamities, he says, shall continue till the dispersion of holy people be ended.

The People of God therefore shall be afflicted all over the World, as long as the World continues; which Testimony of the Prophet, or rather of the Angel, cuts off all hopes of our Peace and Union. For he talks of a perpetual Dispersion and Dissipation; and promises an end to those Divisions on account of Religion, not till the Appearance of Christ. But to comfort those who shall live in those times, he places the Resurrection a little after these sorrows; and we ought to pray to God with a great deal of earnestness, that he would vouchsafe us a joyful one.

Christ himself witnesses, how much we ought to value the Prophet *Daniel*, who made a Sermon to the people on a Text of that Prophet, whom he recommended to them.

Since therefore these our times are full of Troubles and Revolutions, we ought to apply ourselves the more to the study of this Prophet, who Preaches to us, who are plac'd in this last act of the World, and is to be consulted by us in these days of Evil, that we may fortifie ourselves with a certain and true comfort, as by some Bulwork, against that Inundation of distresses which are bursting in upon us.

THE END.